Interface and Hardware Component Configuration Guide for Cisco NCS 540 Series Routers, IOS XR Release 7.7.x

First Published: 2022-07-29

Americas Headquarters
Cisco Systems, Inc.
170 West Tasman Drive
San Jose, CA 95134-1706
USA
http://www.cisco.com
Tel: 408 526-4000
800 553-NETS (6387)
Fax: 408 527-0883

THE SPECIFICATIONS AND INFORMATION REGARDING THE PRODUCTS IN THIS MANUAL ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. ALL STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS IN THIS MANUAL ARE BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE BUT ARE PRESENTED WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. USERS MUST TAKE FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF ANY PRODUCTS.

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE AND LIMITED WARRANTY FOR THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT ARE SET FORTH IN THE INFORMATION PACKET THAT SHIPPED WITH THE PRODUCT AND ARE INCORPORATED HEREIN BY THIS REFERENCE. IF YOU ARE UNABLE TO LOCATE THE SOFTWARE LICENSE OR LIMITED WARRANTY, CONTACT YOUR CISCO REPRESENTATIVE FOR A COPY.

The Cisco implementation of TCP header compression is an adaptation of a program developed by the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) as part of UCB's public domain version of the UNIX operating system. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1981, Regents of the University of California.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY OTHER WARRANTY HEREIN, ALL DOCUMENT FILES AND SOFTWARE OF THESE SUPPLIERS ARE PROVIDED “AS IS" WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND THE ABOVE-NAMED SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THOSE OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MANUAL, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Any Internet Protocol (IP) addresses and phone numbers used in this document are not intended to be actual addresses and phone numbers. Any examples, command display output, network topology diagrams, and other figures included in the document are shown for illustrative purposes only. Any use of actual IP addresses or phone numbers in illustrative content is unintentional and coincidental.

All printed copies and duplicate soft copies of this document are considered uncontrolled. See the current online version for the latest version.

Cisco has more than 200 offices worldwide. Addresses and phone numbers are listed on the Cisco website at www.cisco.com/go/offices.

Cisco and the Cisco logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Cisco and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. To view a list of Cisco trademarks, go to this URL: https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/about/legal/trademarks.html. Third-party trademarks mentioned are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (1721R)

© 2022 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.

CONTENTS

PREFACE

Preface xiii

CHAPTER 1

Preconfiguring Physical Interfaces 1

Physical Interface Preconfiguration Overview 2

Prerequisites for Preconfiguring Physical Interfaces 2

Benefits of Interface Preconfiguration 2

How to Preconfigure Physical Interfaces 3

Use of the Interface Preconfigure Command 4

CHAPTER 2

Configuring Management Ethernet Interface 7

Information About Configuring Management Ethernet Interfaces 7

Prerequisites for Configuring Management Ethernet Interfaces 7

Restrictions on Cisco NCS 540 Series Routers 8

How to Perform Advanced Management Ethernet Interface Configuration 8

IPv6 Stateless Address Auto Configuration on Management Interface 8

Configuring a Management Ethernet Interface 10

Verifying Management Ethernet Interface Configuration 13

CHAPTER 3

Configuring Ethernet Interfaces 15

Configuring Physical Ethernet Interfaces 16

Information About Configuring Ethernet 19

Default Configuration Values for 100-Gigabit Ethernet 19

Network Interface Speed 19

Configuring Network Interface Speed 20

Using the speed command 20

Using the negotiation auto command 24

Using speed and negotiation auto command 26
Ethernet MTU 28
MTU profile support 28
Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) 29
Enabling LLDP Globally 30
Enabling LLDP Per Interface 31

CHAPTER 4 **Configuring Ethernet OAM** 33
Ethernet OAM 33
Ethernet Link OAM 33
Neighbor Discovery 34
EFD 34
Link Monitoring 35
MIB Retrieval 35
Remote Loopback 35
SNMP Traps 35
Unidirectional Link Detection Protocol 35
How to Configure Ethernet OAM 36
Configuring Ethernet Link OAM 36
Configuration Examples for Ethernet OAM 45
Ethernet CFM 47
Maintenance Domains 48
Services 50
Maintenance Points 50
MIP Creation 51
MEP and CFM Processing Overview 51
CFM Protocol Messages 53
Continuity Check (IEEE 802.1ag and ITU-T Y.1731) 53
Loopback (IEEE 802.1ag and ITU-T Y.1731) 56
Linktrace (IEEE 802.1ag and ITU-T Y.1731) 57
Configurable Logging 59
Flexible VLAN Tagging for CFM 59
Configuring Ethernet CFM 60
Configuring a CFM Maintenance Domain 61

Configuring Services for a CFM Maintenance Domain 62
Enabling and Configuring Continuity Check for a CFM Service 63
Configuring Automatic MIP Creation for a CFM Service 65
Configuring Cross-Check on a MEP for a CFM Service 67
Configuring Other Options for a CFM Service 68
Configuring CFM MEPs 70
Configuring Y.1731 AIS 72
Configuring AIS in a CFM Domain Service 72
Configuring AIS on a CFM Interface 74
Configuring EFD for a CFM Service 75
Verifying the EFD Configuration 76
Configuring Flexible VLAN Tagging for CFM 77
Verifying the CFM Configuration 78
Configuration Examples for Ethernet CFM 78
Ethernet CFM Domain Configuration: Example 78
Ethernet CFM Service Configuration: Example 79
Flexible Tagging for an Ethernet CFM Service Configuration: Example 79
Continuity Check for an Ethernet CFM Service Configuration: Example 79
MIP Creation for an Ethernet CFM Service Configuration: Example 79
Cross-check for an Ethernet CFM Service Configuration: Example 79
Other Ethernet CFM Service Parameter Configuration: Example 79
MEP Configuration: Example 80
Ethernet CFM Show Command: Examples 80
AIS for CFM Configuration: Examples 83
AIS for CFM Show Commands: Examples 84
show ethernet cfm interfaces ais Command: Example 84
show ethernet cfm local meps Command: Examples 84
show ethernet cfm local meps detail Command: Example 86
Troubleshooting Tips 86
CFM Over Bundles 87
CFM Adaptive Bandwidth Notifications 88
Bandwidth Notification Messages 89
Restrictions for CFM Bandwidth Notifications 89
Bandwidth Reporting 90

Damping Algorithm 91
Conformance Testing Algorithm 92
Embedded Event Manager 92
Event Publishing 93
CFM with SAT and EDPL 94
Y.1731 Performance Monitoring 94
One-Way Delay Measurement 95
Configuring One-Way Delay Measurement 95
Two-Way Delay Measurement for Scalability 95
Configuring Two-Way Delay Measurement 96
Synthetic Loss Measurement 100
Configuring Synthetic Loss Measurement 101
Unidirectional Link Detection Protocol 103
UDLD Operation 104
Types of Fault Detection 104
UDLD Modes of Operation 105
UDLD Aging Mechanism 105
State Machines 105
Main FSM 105
Detection FSM 106
Ethernet SLA Statistics Measurement in a Profile 107
Minimum delay bin 111
Configure minimum delay bin support 112
Link loss forwarding 114
Link state monitor and propagation by CFM 115
Restrictions for link loss forwarding 115
Configure link loss forwarding 116

CHAPTER 5 **Integrated Routing and Bridging** 119
Supported Features on a BVI 119
BVI Interface and Line Protocol States 120
Prerequisites for Configuring IRB 120
Restrictions for Configuring IRB 121
How to Configure IRB 122

Configuring the Bridge Group Virtual Interface 122
Configuration Guidelines 122
Configuring the Layer 2 AC Interfaces 124
Configuring a Bridge Group and Assigning Interfaces to a Bridge Domain 125
Associating the BVI as the Routed Interface on a Bridge Domain 126
Displaying Information About a BVI 127
Additional Information on IRB 128
Packet Flows Using IRB 128
Packet Flows When Host A Sends to Host B on the Bridge Domain 128
Packet Flows When Host A Sends to Host C From the Bridge Domain to a Routed Interface 129
Packet Flows When Host C Sends to Host B From a Routed Interface to the Bridge Domain 129
Configuration Examples for IRB 129
Basic IRB Configuration: Example 130
IPv4 Addressing on a BVI Supporting Multiple IP Networks: Example 130
IRB With BVI and VRRP Configuration: Example 130

CHAPTER 6 **Configuring Link Bundling** 133
Compatible Characteristics of Ethernet Link Bundles 133
Information About Configuring Link Bundling 136
IEEE 802.3ad Standard 136
Link Bundle Configuration Overview 136
Link Switchover 137
Configuring Ethernet Link Bundles 137
VLANs on an Ethernet Link Bundle 141
Configuring VLAN over Bundles 141
142
LACP Short Period Time Intervals 145
Configuring the Default LACP Short Period Time Interval 146
Configuring Custom LACP Short Period Time Intervals 147
Bundle Consistency Checker 152

CHAPTER 7 **Configuring Traffic Mirroring** 157
Introduction to Traffic Mirroring 157
Traffic Mirroring Terminology 158

Traffic Mirroring Types 158
Characteristics of Source Port 158
Characteristics of Monitor Session 159
Characteristics of Destination Port 159
Supported Scale 159
Restrictions 159
SPAN Types, Supported Features, and Configurations 162
Local SPAN 162
SPAN on Subinterfaces 162
VLAN Subinterface as Ingress or Egress Source for Traffic Mirroring 162
Monitoring Traffic Mirroring on a Layer 2 Interface 164
ACL-based SPAN 164
Configuring Security ACLs for Traffic Mirroring 164
Configuring UDF-Based Security ACL for Traffic Mirroring 165
Attaching the Configurable Source Interface 167
ERSPAN 169
Introduction to ERSPAN Egress Rate Limit 169
ERSPAN Traffic to a Destination Tunnel in a Default VRF 173
ERSPAN Traffic to a Destination Tunnel in a Non-Default VRF 174
Troubleshoot Traffic Mirroring 175

CHAPTER 8 **Configuring Virtual Loopback and Null Interfaces 179**
Information About Configuring Virtual Interfaces 179
Virtual Loopback Interface Overview 179
Prerequisites for Configuring Virtual Interfaces 180
Configuring Virtual Loopback Interfaces 180
Null Interface Overview 181
Configuring Null Interfaces 182
Configuring Virtual IPv4 Interfaces 184

CHAPTER 9 **Configuring 802.1Q VLAN Interfaces 187**
Configuring 802.1Q VLAN Interfaces 187
Information About Configuring 802.1Q VLAN Interfaces 188
Subinterfaces 188

Subinterface MTU 188
EFPs 188
Layer 2 VPN on VLANs 188
How to Configure 802.1Q VLAN Interfaces 189
Configuring 802.1Q VLAN Subinterfaces 189
Verification 191
Configuring an Attachment Circuit on a VLAN 191
Removing an 802.1Q VLAN Subinterface 193

CHAPTER 10 **Configuring GRE Tunnels 195**
Configuring GRE Tunnels 195
Single Pass GRE Encapsulation Allowing Line Rate Encapsulation 197
Configure GRE Single-Pass Entropy 197
Running Configuration 201
Verification 204

CHAPTER 11 **Configuring Controllers 207**
Optics Controllers 207
How to Configure Controllers 207
Configuring Optics Controller 208
Configure Port Mode Speed 209
Configuring Wavelength 212

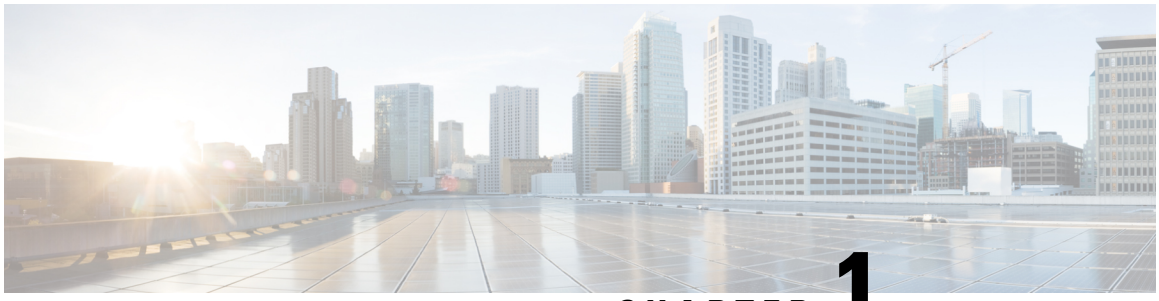
CHAPTER 12 **Configuring 400G Digital Coherent Optics 215**
Configuring Frequency 218
Configuring Chromatic Dispersion 220
Configuring Optical Transmit Power 222
Configuring Muxponder Mode 224
Configuring Modulation 228
Configuring DAC Rate 229
Configuring FEC 231
Configuring Loopback 232
Configuring Performance Monitoring 233
Configuring PM Parameters 234

Configuring Alarms Threshold 237
Alarms Troubleshooting 239
CD Alarm 239
Clear the CD Alarm 239
DGD Alarm 239
Clear the DGD Alarm 239
FLEXO_LOF 240
Clear the FLEXO_LOF Alarm 240
FLEXO_LOM 240
Clear the FLEXO_LOM Alarm 240
HI-LASERBIAS Alarm 240
Clear the HI-LASERBIAS Alarm 241
HI-RXPOWER Alarm 241
Clear the HI-RXPOWER Alarm 241
HI-RXPOWER Warn 241
Clear the HI-RXPOWER Warn Alarm 242
HI-TEMP Alarm 242
Clear the HI-TEMP Alarm 242
HI-TEMP Warn 242
Clear the HI-TEMP Warn Alarm 242
HI-TXPOWER Alarm 243
Clear the HI-TXPOWER Alarm 243
HI-TXPOWER Warn 243
Clear the HI-TXPOWER Warn Alarm 243
IMPROPER-REM 244
Clear the IMPROPER-REM Alarm 244
LOF 244
Clear the LOF Alarm 244
LOL 244
Clear the LOL Alarm 245
LOM 245
Clear the LOM Alarm 245
LO-RXPOWER Alarm 245
Clear the LO-RXPOWER Alarm 246

LO-RXPOWER Warn 246
Clear the LO-RXPOWER Warn Alarm 246
LOS 246
Clear the LOS Alarm 246
LOS-P 247
Clear the LOS-P Alarm 247
LO-TXPOWER Alarm 247
Clear the LO-TXPOWER Alarm 247
LO-TXPOWER Warn 247
Clear the LO-TXPOWER Warn Alarm 248
OOR_CD 248
Clear the OOR_CD Alarm 248
OSNR Alarm 248
Clear the OSNR Alarm 248
UNC-WORD Alarm 249
Clear the UNC-WORD Alarm 249
WVL-OOL 249
Clear the WVL-OOL Alarm 250

Preface

Note This release has reached end-of-life status. For more information, see the End-of-Life and End-of-Sale Notices.



CHAPTER 1

Preconfiguring Physical Interfaces

This module describes the preconfiguration of physical interfaces.

Preconfiguration is supported for these types of interfaces and controllers:

- 1-Gigabit Ethernet
- 10-Gigabit Ethernet
- 25-Gigabit Ethernet
- 40-Gigabit Ethernet
- 100-Gigabit Ethernet
- Management Ethernet

Preconfiguration allows you to configure line cards before they are inserted into the router. When the line cards are inserted, they are instantly configured. The preconfiguration information is created in a different system database tree (known as the *preconfiguration directory* on the route processor), rather than with the regularly configured interfaces.

There may be some preconfiguration data that cannot be verified unless the line cards are present, because the verifiers themselves run only on the line cards. Such preconfiguration data is verified when the line cards is inserted and the verifiers are initiated. A configuration is rejected if errors are found when the configuration is copied from the preconfiguration area to the active area.

Note One Gigabit Ethernet interface is not supported. Only physical interfaces can be preconfigured.

Note Eight quadrature amplitude modulation (8QAM) requires V2 (or higher) CFP2 version and 5.23 (or higher) firmware.

- Physical Interface Preconfiguration Overview, on page 2
- Prerequisites for Preconfiguring Physical Interfaces, on page 2
- Benefits of Interface Preconfiguration, on page 2
- How to Preconfigure Physical Interfaces, on page 3
- Use of the Interface Preconfigure Command, on page 4

Physical Interface Preconfiguration Overview

Preconfiguration is the process of configuring interfaces before they are present in the system. Preconfigured interfaces are not verified or applied until the actual interface with the matching location (rack/slot/module) is inserted into the router. When the anticipated line card is inserted and the interfaces are created, the precreated configuration information is verified and, if successful, immediately applied to the running configuration of the router.

Note When you plug the anticipated line card in, make sure to verify any preconfiguration with the appropriate **show** commands.

Use the **show run** command to see interfaces that are in the preconfigured state.

Note We recommend filling out preconfiguration information in your site planning guide, so that you can compare that anticipated configuration with the actual preconfigured interfaces when that line card is installed and the interfaces are up.

Tip Tip Use the **commit best-effort** command to save the preconfiguration to the running configuration file. The **commit best-effort** command merges the target configuration with the running configuration and commits only valid configuration (best effort). Some configuration might fail due to semantic errors, but the valid configuration still comes up.

Prerequisites for Preconfiguring Physical Interfaces

Before preconfiguring physical interfaces, ensure that this condition is met:

- Preconfiguration drivers and files are installed. Although it may be possible to preconfigure physical interfaces without a preconfiguration driver installed, the preconfiguration files are required to set the interface definition file on the router that supplies the strings for valid interface names.

Benefits of Interface Preconfiguration

Preconfigurations reduce downtime when you add new cards to the system. With preconfiguration, the new cards can be instantly configured and actively running during cards bootup.

Another advantage of performing a preconfiguration is that during a cards replacement, when the cards is removed, you can still see the previous configuration and make modifications.

How to Preconfigure Physical Interfaces

This task describes only the most basic preconfiguration of an interface.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **interface preconfigure** *type interface-path-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface preconfigure HundredGigE 0/0/1/0
```

Enters interface preconfiguration mode for an interface, where *type* specifies the supported interface type that you want to configure and *interface-path-id* specifies the location where the interface will be located in *rack*/*slot*/*module*/*port* notation.

Step 3 Use one of the following commands:

- **ipv4 address** *ip-address subnet-mask*
- **ipv4 address** *ip-address*/*prefix*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if-pre)# ipv4 address 192.168.1.2/31
```

Assigns an IP address and mask to the interface.

Step 4 Configure additional interface parameters, as described in this manual in the configuration chapter that applies to the type of interface that you are configuring.

Step 5 **end** or **commit** best-effort

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if-pre)# end
```

or

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if-pre)# commit
```

Saves configuration changes.

- When you issue the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes: `Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting (yes/no/cancel)?`
- Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.

- Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.
- Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.
- Use the **commit best-effort** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session. The **commit best-effort** command merges the target configuration with the running configuration and commits only valid changes (best effort). Some configuration changes might fail due to semantic errors.

Step 6 **show running-config**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show running-config
```

(Optional) Displays the configuration information currently running on the router.

Example

This example shows how to preconfigure a basic Ethernet interface:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface preconfigure HundredGigE 0/0/1/0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ipv4 address 192.168.1.2/31
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if-pre)# commit
```

Use of the Interface Preconfigure Command

Interfaces that are not yet present in the system can be preconfigured with the **interface preconfigure** command in global configuration mode.

The **interface preconfigure** command places the router in interface configuration mode. Users should be able to add any possible interface commands. The verifiers registered for the preconfigured interfaces verify the configuration. The preconfiguration is complete when the user enters the **end** command, or any matching exit or global configuration mode command.

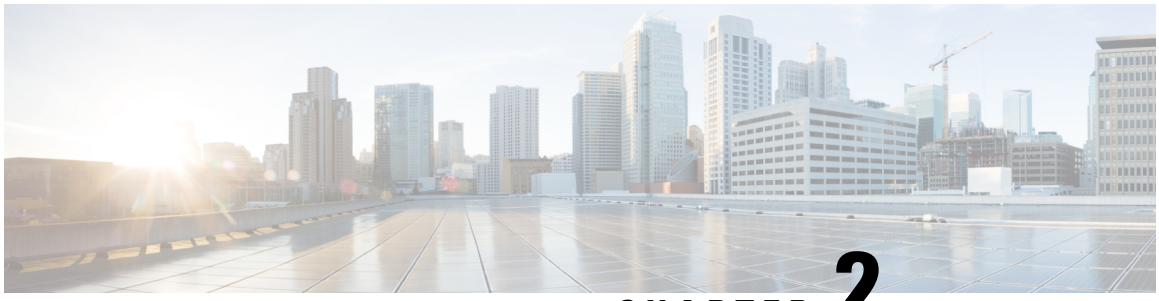
Note It is possible that some configurations cannot be verified until the line card is inserted.

Do not enter the **no shutdown** command for new preconfigured interfaces, because the no form of this command removes the existing configuration, and there is no existing configuration.

Users are expected to provide names during preconfiguration that will match the name of the interface that will be created. If the interface names do not match, the preconfiguration cannot be applied when the interface is created. The interface names must begin with the interface type that is supported by the router and for which

drivers have been installed. However, the slot, port, subinterface number, and channel interface number information cannot be validated.

Note Specifying an interface name that already exists and is configured (or an abbreviated name like Hu0/3/0/0) is not permitted.



CHAPTER 2

Configuring Management Ethernet Interface

This module describes the configuration of Management Ethernet interfaces.

Before you can use Telnet to access the router through the LAN IP address, you must set up a Management Ethernet interface and enable Telnet servers.

Note Although the Management Ethernet interfaces on the system are present by default, you must configure these interfaces to use them for accessing the router, using protocols and applications such as Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP), HTTP, extensible markup language (XML), TFTP, Telnet, and command-line interface (CLI).

Note In a High Availability setup, when an active RP interface is shut the ping to gateway fails, though standby RP or virtual RP is up and running. RSP4 does not support inject packets from a standby RP management interface.

- Information About Configuring Management Ethernet Interfaces, on page 7
- Prerequisites for Configuring Management Ethernet Interfaces, on page 7
- Restrictions on Cisco NCS 540 Series Routers, on page 8
- How to Perform Advanced Management Ethernet Interface Configuration, on page 8

Information About Configuring Management Ethernet Interfaces

To configure Management Ethernet interfaces, you must understand the following concept:

Prerequisites for Configuring Management Ethernet Interfaces

Before performing the Management Ethernet interface configuration procedures that are described in this chapter, be sure that the following tasks and conditions are met:

- You have performed the initial configuration of the Management Ethernet interface.
- You know how to apply the generalized interface name specification *rack/slot/module/port*.

Note For transparent switchover, both active and standby Management Ethernet interfaces are expected to be physically connected to the same LAN or switch.

Restrictions on Cisco NCS 540 Series Routers

The restrictions are applicable on the following routers.

- N540-28Z4C-SYS-A
- N540-28Z4C-SYS-D
- N540X-16Z4G8Q2C-A
- N540X-16Z4G8Q2C-D
- N540-12Z20G-SYS-A
- N540-12Z20G-SYS-D
- N540X-12Z16G-SYS-A
- N540X-12Z16G-SYS-D
- Virtual IPv6 addressing is not supported on the management interface.

How to Perform Advanced Management Ethernet Interface Configuration

This section contains the following procedures:

IPv6 Stateless Address Auto Configuration on Management Interface

Perform this task to enable IPv6 stateless auto configuration on Management interface.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **interface MgmtEth** *interface-path-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface MgmtEth 0/RP0/CPU0/0
```

Enters interface configuration mode and specifies the Ethernet interface name and notation *rack*/*slot*/*module*/*port*.

The example indicates port 0 on the RP card that is installed in slot 0.

Step 3 **ipv6 address autoconfig**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ipv6 address autoconfig
```

Enable IPv6 stateless address auto configuration on the management port.

Step 4 **end** or **commit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# end
```

or

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# commit
```

Saves configuration changes.

- When you issue the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes:

```
Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)?
[cancel]:
```

- Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.
- Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.
- Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.
- Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Step 5 **show ipv6 interfaces** *interface-path-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ipv6 interfaces gigabitEthernet 0/0/0/0
```

(Optional) Displays statistics for interfaces on the router.

Example

This example displays :

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface MgmtEth 0/RP0/CPU0/0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ipv6 address autoconfig
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# commit
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ipv6 interfaces gigabitEthernet 0/0/0/0

Fri Nov  4 16:48:14.372 IST
GigabitEthernet0/2/0/0 is Up, ipv6 protocol is Up, Vrfid is default (0x60000000)
  IPv6 is enabled, link-local address is fe80::d1:1eff:fe2b:baf
  Global unicast address(es):
    5::d1:1eff:fe2b:baf [AUTO CONFIGURED], subnet is 5::/64  <<<<<<  auto configured address

  Joined group address(es): ff02::1:ff2b:baf ff02::2 ff02::1
  MTU is 1514 (1500 is available to IPv6)
  ICMP redirects are disabled
  ICMP unreachables are enabled
  ND DAD is enabled, number of DAD attempts 1
  ND reachable time is 0 milliseconds
  ND cache entry limit is 1000000000
  ND advertised retransmit interval is 0 milliseconds
  Hosts use stateless autoconfig for addresses.
  Outgoing access list is not set
  Inbound  common access list is not set, access list is not set
  Table Id is 0xe0800000
  Complete protocol adjacency: 0
  Complete glean adjacency: 0
  Incomplete protocol adjacency: 0
  Incomplete glean adjacency: 0
  Dropped protocol request: 0
  Dropped glean request: 0
```

Configuring a Management Ethernet Interface

Perform this task to configure a Management Ethernet interface. This procedure provides the minimal configuration required for the Management Ethernet interface.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **interface MgmtEth** *interface-path-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface MgmtEth 0/RP0/CPU0/0
```

Enters interface configuration mode and specifies the Ethernet interface name and notation *rack*/*slot*/*module*/*port*.

The example indicates port 0 on the RP card that is installed in slot 0.

Step 3 **ipv4 address** *ip-address mask*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ipv4 address 1.76.18.150/16 (or)
ipv4 address 1.76.18.150 255.255.0.0
```

Assigns an IP address and subnet mask to the interface.

- Replace *ip-address* with the primary IPv4 address for the interface.
- Replace *mask* with the mask for the associated IP subnet. The network mask can be specified in either of two ways:
- The network mask can be a four-part dotted decimal address. For example, 255.255.0.0 indicates that each bit equal to 1 means that the corresponding address bit belongs to the network address.
- The network mask can be indicated as a slash (/) and number. For example, /16 indicates that the first 16 bits of the mask are ones, and the corresponding bits of the address are network address.

Step 4 **no ipv6 address autoconfig**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# no ipv6 address autoconfig
```

(Optional) Disables IPv6 address on the interface.

Step 5 **mtu** *bytes*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# mtu 1488
```

(Optional) Sets the maximum transmission unit (MTU) byte value for the interface. The default is 1514.

- The default is 1514 bytes.
- The range for the Management Ethernet interface Interface **mtu** values is 64 to 1514 bytes.

Step 6 **no shutdown**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# no shutdown
```

Removes the shutdown configuration, which removes the forced administrative down on the interface, enabling it to move to an up or down state.

Step 7 **end** or **commit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# end
```

or

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# commit
```

Saves configuration changes.

- When you issue the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes:

```
Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)?
[cancel]:
```

- Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.
- Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.
- Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.
- Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Step 8 **show interfaces MgmtEth** *interface-path-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show interfaces MgmtEth 0/RP0/CPU0/0
```

(Optional) Displays statistics for interfaces on the router.

Example

This example displays advanced configuration and verification of the Management Ethernet interface on the RP:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface MgmtEth 0/RP0/CPU0/0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ipv4 address 1.76.18.150/16
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# no ipv6 address autoconfig
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# no shutdown
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# commit
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router:Mar 26 01:09:28.685 :ifmgr[190]:%LINK-3-UPDOWN :Interface
MgmtEth0/RP0/CPU0/0, changed state to Up
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# end

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show interfaces MgmtEth 0/RP0/CPU0/0

MgmtEth0/RP0/CPU0/0 is up, line protocol is up
  Interface state transitions: 3
  Hardware is Management Ethernet, address is 1005.cad8.4354 (bia 1005.cad8.4354)
  Internet address is 1.76.18.150/16
```

```
  MTU 1488 bytes, BW 1000000 Kbit (Max: 1000000 Kbit)
     reliability 255/255, txload 0/255, rxload 0/255
  Encapsulation ARPA,
  Full-duplex, 1000Mb/s, 1000BASE-T, link type is autonegotiation
  loopback not set,
  Last link flapped 00:00:59
  ARP type ARPA, ARP timeout 04:00:00
  Last input 00:00:00, output 00:00:02
  Last clearing of "show interface" counters never
  5 minute input rate 4000 bits/sec, 3 packets/sec
  5 minute output rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
     21826 packets input, 4987886 bytes, 0 total input drops
     0 drops for unrecognized upper-level protocol
     Received 12450 broadcast packets, 8800 multicast packets
              0 runts, 0 giants, 0 throttles, 0 parity
     0 input errors, 0 CRC, 0 frame, 0 overrun, 0 ignored, 0 abort
     1192 packets output, 217483 bytes, 0 total output drops
     Output 0 broadcast packets, 0 multicast packets
     0 output errors, 0 underruns, 0 applique, 0 resets
     0 output buffer failures, 0 output buffers swapped out
     3 carrier transitions

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show running-config interface MgmtEth 0/RP0/CPU0/0

interface MgmtEth0/RP0/CPU0/0
 mtu 1488
 ipv4 address 1.76.18.150/16
 ipv6 address 2002::14c:125a/64
 ipv6 enable
!
```

The following example displays VRF configuration and verification of the Management Ethernet interface on the RP with source address:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show run interface MgmtEth 0/RP0/CPU0/0
interface MgmtEth0/RP0/CPU0/0
 vrf httpupload
 ipv4 address 10.8.67.20 255.255.0.0
 ipv6 address 2001:10:8:67::20/48
!

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show run http
Wed Jan 30 14:58:53.458 UTC
http client vrf httpupload
http client source-interface ipv4 MgmtEth0/RP0/CPU0/0

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show run vrf
Wed Jan 30 14:59:00.014 UTC
vrf httpupload
!
```

Verifying Management Ethernet Interface Configuration

Perform this task to verify configuration modifications on the Management Ethernet interfaces.

Procedure

Step 1 **show interfaces MgmtEth** *interface-path-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show interfaces MgmtEth 0/RP0/CPU0/0
MgmtEth0/RP0/CPU0/0 is up, line protocol is up
  Interface state transitions: 3
  Hardware is Management Ethernet, address is 4ce1.767c.3b00 (bia 4ce1.767c.3b00)
  Internet address is 1.76.18.150/16
  MTU 1488 bytes, BW 1000000 Kbit (Max: 1000000 Kbit)
     reliability 255/255, txload 0/255, rxload 0/255
  Encapsulation ARPA,
  Full-duplex, 1000Mb/s, 1000BASE-T, link type is autonegotiation
  loopback not set,
  Last link flapped 11w5d
  ARP type ARPA, ARP timeout 04:00:00
  Last input 00:00:00, output 02:26:34
  Last clearing of "show interface" counters never
  5 minute input rate 12000 bits/sec, 11 packets/sec
  5 minute output rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
     12703775975 packets input, 3169461581071 bytes, 0 total input drops
     0 drops for unrecognized upper-level protocol
     Received 12696055435 broadcast packets, 3869832 multicast packets
              0 runts, 0 giants, 0 throttles, 0 parity
     0 input errors, 0 CRC, 0 frame, 0 overrun, 0 ignored, 0 abort
     15836861 packets output, 6225384076 bytes, 0 total output drops
     Output 0 broadcast packets, 4 multicast packets
     0 output errors, 0 underruns, 0 applique, 0 resets
     0 output buffer failures, 0 output buffers swapped out
     3 carrier transitions
```

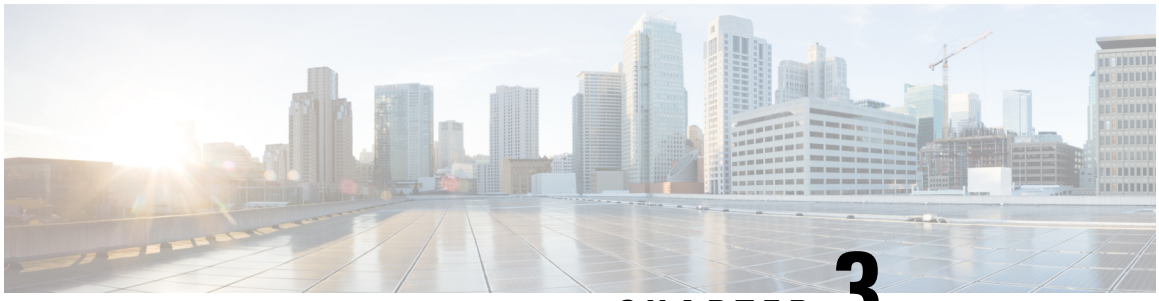
Displays the Management Ethernet interface configuration.

Step 2 **show running-config interface MgmtEth** *interface-path-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show running-config interface MgmtEth 0/RP0/CPU0/0
interface MgmtEth0/RP0/CPU0/0
 mtu 1488
 vrf mgmt
 ipv4 address 1.76.18.150 255.255.0.0
!
RP/0/RP0/CPU0: router#
```

Displays the running configuration.



CHAPTER 3

Configuring Ethernet Interfaces

This module describes the configuration of Ethernet interfaces.

The following distributed ethernet architecture delivers network scalability and performance, while enabling service providers to offer high-density, high-bandwidth networking solutions.

- 1-Gigabit
- 10-Gigabit
- 25-Gigabit
- 40-Gigabit
- 100-Gigabit

Tip You can programmatically configure and manage the Ethernet interfaces using `openconfig-ethernet-if.yang` and `openconfig-interfaces.yang` OpenConfig data models. To get started with using data models, see the *Programmability Configuration Guide for Cisco NCS 540 Series Routers*.

These solutions are designed to interconnect the router with other systems in point-of-presence (POP)s, including core and edge routers and Layer 2 and Layer 3 switches.

Restrictions for Configuring Ethernet Interfaces

- Router does not support configuration of the static mac address.
- As per design, traffic logs for incoming CRC error packets don't display packets per second (PPS) and other packet-specific information, as highlighted below.

```
Router# show interface tenGigE 0/0/0/10 | include packets

5 minute input rate 541242000 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
5 minute output rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
   0 packets input, 7718374402816 bytes, 0 total input drops
   Received 0 broadcast packets, 0 multicast packets
   2952 packets output, 389664 bytes, 0 total output drops
   Output 0 broadcast packets, 2952 multicast packets
```

- The router doesn't support connecting a 1Gig copper cable to a 25GbE or higher speed QSFP ports.

- For 1Gig fibre cable, the router doesn't support auto-negotiation for 25GbE or higher speed QSFP ports.

- Configuring Physical Ethernet Interfaces, on page 16
- Information About Configuring Ethernet, on page 19
- Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP), on page 29
- Enabling LLDP Globally, on page 30
- Enabling LLDP Per Interface, on page 31

Configuring Physical Ethernet Interfaces

Use this procedure to create a basic Ethernet interface configuration.

Procedure

Step 1 **show version**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show version
```

(Optional) Displays the current software version, and can also be used to confirm that the router recognizes the line card.

Step 2 **show interfaces** [**GigE** | **TenGigE** | **TwentyFiveGigE** | **FortyGigE** | **HundredGigE**] *interface-path-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show interface HundredGigE 0/0/1/0
```

(Optional) Displays the configured interface and checks the status of each interface port.

Step 3 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure terminal
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 4 **interface** [**GigE** | **TenGigE** | **TwentyFiveGigE** | **FortyGigE** | **HundredGigE**] *interface-path-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface HundredGigE 0/0/1/0
```

Enters interface configuration mode and specifies the Ethernet interface name and notation *rack/slot/module/port*. Possible interface types for this procedure are:

- GigE
- 10GigE
- 25GigE

- 40GigE
- 100GigE

Note
- The example indicates a 100-Gigabit Ethernet interface in the line card in slot 1.

The supported *interface-path-id* ranges are:

- **GigE** — 0/0/0/0 - 0/0/0/31
- **TenGigE** — 0/0/0/0 - 0/0/0/31
- **TwentyFiveGigE** — 0/0/0/24 - 0/0/0/31
- **FortyGigE** — 0/0/1/0 - 0/0/1/1
- **HundredGigE** — 0/0/1/0 - 0/0/1/1

Step 5 **ipv4 address** *ip-address mask*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ipv4 address 172.18.189.38 255.255.255.224
```

Assigns an IP address and subnet mask to the interface.

- Replace *ip-address* with the primary IPv4 address for the interface.
- Replace *mask* with the mask for the associated IP subnet. The network mask can be specified in either of two ways:
- The network mask can be a four-part dotted decimal address. For example, 255.0.0.0 indicates that each bit equal to 1 means that the corresponding address bit belongs to the network address.
- The network mask can be indicated as a slash (/) and number. For example, /8 indicates that the first 8 bits of the mask are ones, and the corresponding bits of the address are network address.

Step 6 **mtu** *bytes*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# mtu 2000
```

(Optional) Sets the MTU value for the interface.

- The configurable range for MTU values is 1514 bytes to 9646 bytes.
- The default is 1514 bytes for normal frames and 1518 bytes for 802.1Q tagged frames.

Step 7 **no shutdown**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# no shutdown
```

Removes the shutdown configuration, which forces an interface administratively down.

Step 8 **show interfaces** [**GigE TenGigETwentyFiveGigE TwentyFiveGigE FortyGigE HundredGigE**] *interface-path-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show interfaces HundredGigE
0/0/1/0
```

(Optional) Displays statistics for interfaces on the router.

Example

This example shows how to configure an interface for a 100-Gigabit Ethernet line card:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface HundredGigE 0/0/1/0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ipv4 address 172.18.189.38 255.255.255.224

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# mtu 2000

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# no shutdown
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# end
Uncommitted changes found, commit them? [yes]: yes

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show interfaces HundredGigE 0/0/1/0
HundredGigE0/0/1/0 is up, line protocol is up
  Interface state transitions: 1
  Hardware is HundredGigE, address is 6219.8864.e330 (bia 6219.8864.e330)
  Internet address is 3.24.1.1/24
  MTU 9216 bytes, BW 100000000 Kbit (Max: 100000000 Kbit)
     reliability 255/255, txload 3/255, rxload 3/255
  Encapsulation ARPA,
  Full-duplex, 100000Mb/s, link type is force-up
  output flow control is off, input flow control is off
  Carrier delay (up) is 10 msec
  loopback not set,
  Last link flapped 10:05:07
  ARP type ARPA, ARP timeout 04:00:00
  Last input 00:08:56, output 00:00:00
  Last clearing of "show interface" counters never
  5 minute input rate 1258567000 bits/sec, 1484160 packets/sec
  5 minute output rate 1258584000 bits/sec, 1484160 packets/sec
     228290765840 packets input, 27293508436038 bytes, 0 total input drops
     0 drops for unrecognized upper-level protocol
     Received 15 broadcast packets, 45 multicast packets
              0 runts, 0 giants, 0 throttles, 0 parity
     0 input errors, 0 CRC, 0 frame, 0 overrun, 0 ignored, 0 abort
     212467849449 packets output, 25733664696650 bytes, 0 total output drops
     Output 23 broadcast packets, 15732 multicast packets
     39 output errors, 0 underruns, 0 applique, 0 resets
     0 output buffer failures, 0 output buffers swapped out
     0 carrier transitions

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show running-config interface HundredGigE 0/0/1/0

interface HundredGigE 0/0/1/0
```

```
 mtu 9216

 ipv4 address 3.24.1.1 255.255.255.0
 ipv6 address 3:24:1::1/64
 flow ipv4 monitor perfv4 sampler fsm ingress
!
```

Information About Configuring Ethernet

This section provides the following information sections:

Default Configuration Values for 100-Gigabit Ethernet

This table describes the default interface configuration parameters that are present when an interface is enabled on a 10-Gigabit Ethernet or 100-Gigabit Ethernet line card.

Note You must use the **shutdown** command to bring an interface administratively down. The interface default is **no shutdown**. When a line card is first inserted into the router, if there is no established preconfiguration for it, the configuration manager adds a shutdown item to its configuration. This shutdown can be removed only be entering the **no shutdown** command.

Table 1: 100-Gigabit Ethernet line card Default Configuration Values

Parameter	Configuration File Entry	Default Value
MTU	**mtu**	• 1514 bytes for normal frames • 1518 bytes for 802.1Q tagged frames. • 1522 bytes for Q-in-Q frames.
MAC address	**mac address**	Hardware burned-in address (BIA)

Network Interface Speed

1Gig interfaces connected through copper or fiber cable can have interface speed of either 100 Mbps or 1000 Mbps. This is applicable on 1Gig interface with a 1000Base-T module (GLC-TE). By default 1G interface has following capabilities:

- Speed—1000 Mbps for fiber cable and autonegotiate for copper cable
- Duplex—Full
- Pause—Receive Part (RX) and Transmit Part (TX)

The copper and fiber cables have same default values as mentioned above but autonegotiation is default for copper cable.

The speed can either configured or set to autonegotiate with remote end interface. When in autonegotiation mode, an interface is capable of negotiating the speed of 100 Mbps or 1000 Mbps depending on the speed at the remote end interface; and other parameters such as full duplex and pause are also autonegotiated.

Autonegotiation is an optional function of the Fast Ethernet standard that enables devices to automatically exchange information over a link about speed and duplex abilities. Autonegotiation is very useful for ports where devices with different capabilities are connected and disconnected on a regular basis.

Note Autonegotiation is disabled by default, but it's mandatory on QSFP-100G-CUxM link. You must enable autonegotiation manually when you use 100GBASE-CR4 DAC cable.

Note Starting with IOS-XR software release 24.1.1, the default value for Forward Error Correction (FEC) is set to disabled for 25G 1M and 2M copper optics.

Configuring Network Interface Speed

You can configure the network interface speed by using one of the following methods:

- Using the **speed** command
- Using the **negotiation auto** command
- Using both **speed** and **negotiation auto** command

Note Cisco recommends configuring network interface speed in autonegotiation mode.

Using the speed command

When you configure the speed of the network interface (1G) using the **speed** command, the interface speed is forced to the configured speed by limiting the speed value of the auto negotiated parameter to the configured speed.

This sample configuration forces the Gig interface speed to 100Mbps.

Note The interface speed at remote end is also set to 100Mbps.

```
#configuration
 (config)#interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0/31
 (config-if)#speed 100
 (config-if)#commit
 (config-if)#end
```

Use the **show controller GigE** and **show interface GigE** commands to verify if the speed is configured to 100Mbps and autonegotiation is disabled:

```
#show controllers GigabitEthernet 0/0/0/31
Operational data for interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/31:
State:
    Administrative state: enabled
    Operational state: Up
    LED state: Green On
Phy:
    Media type: Four-pair Category 5 UTP PHY, full duplex
    Optics:
        Vendor: CISCO
        Part number: SBCU-5740ARZ-CS1
        Serial number: AVC194525HW
        Wavelength: 0 nm
    Digital Optical Monitoring:
        Transceiver Temp: 0.000 C
        Transceiver Voltage: 0.000 V

        Alarms key: (H) Alarm high, (h) Warning high
                    (L) Alarm low, (l) Warning low
           Wavelength    Tx Power          Rx Power      Laser Bias
        Lane  (nm)     (dBm)     (mW)      (dBm)      (mW)       (mA)
        --   -----   ------   ------    ------   ------    ------
        0     n/a     0.0   1.0000     0.0   1.0000     0.000

        DOM alarms:
            No alarms

        Alarm                     Alarm    Warning   Warning    Alarm
        Thresholds                High      High       Low       Low
                                 -------   -------   -------   -------
        Transceiver Temp (C):      0.000     0.000     0.000     0.000
        Transceiver Voltage (V):   0.000     0.000     0.000     0.000
        Laser Bias (mA):           0.000     0.000     0.000     0.000
        Transmit Power (mW):       1.000     1.000     1.000     1.000
        Transmit Power (dBm):      0.000     0.000     0.000     0.000
        Receive Power (mW):        1.000     1.000     1.000     1.000
        Receive Power (dBm):       0.000     0.000     0.000     0.000
    Statistics:
        FEC:
            Corrected Codeword Count: 0
            Uncorrected Codeword Count: 0

MAC address information:
    Operational address: 0035.1a00.e67c
    Burnt-in address: 0035.1a00.e62c
Autonegotiation disabled.

Operational values:
    Speed: 100Mbps       /*Gig interface speed is set to 100Mbps */
    Duplex: Full Duplex
    Flowcontrol: None
    Loopback: None (or external)
    MTU: 1514
    MRU: 1514
    Forward error correction: Disabled


#show interfaces GigabitEthernet 0/0/0/31
GigabitEthernet0/0/0/31 is up, line protocol is up
  Interface state transitions: 7
```

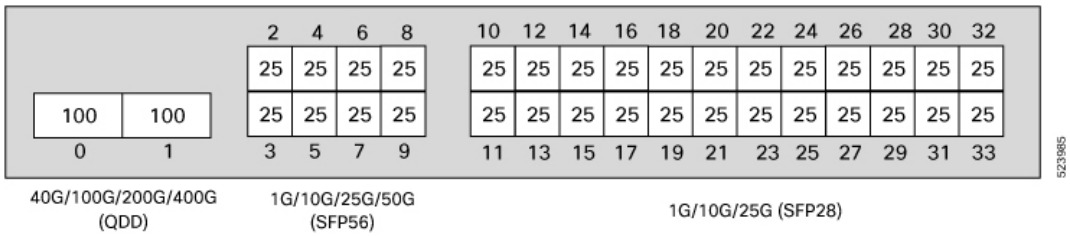
```
  Hardware is GigabitEthernet, address is 0035.1a00.e62c (bia 0035.1a00.e62c)
  Internet address is Unknown
  MTU 1514 bytes, BW 100000 Kbit (Max: 100000 Kbit)
     reliability 255/255, txload 0/255, rxload 0/255
  Encapsulation ARPA,
  Full-duplex, 100Mb/s, TFD, link type is force-up
  output flow control is off, input flow control is off
  Carrier delay (up) is 10 msec
  loopback not set,
  Last link flapped 00:00:30
  Last input 00:00:00, output 00:00:00
  Last clearing of "show interface" counters never
  30 second input rate 1000 bits/sec, 1 packets/sec
  30 second output rate 0 bits/sec, 1 packets/sec
     90943 packets input, 11680016 bytes, 0 total input drops
     0 drops for unrecognized upper-level protocol
     Received 0 broadcast packets, 90943 multicast packets
              0 runts, 0 giants, 0 throttles, 0 parity
     0 input errors, 0 CRC, 0 frame, 0 overrun, 0 ignored, 0 abort
     61279 packets output, 4347618 bytes, 0 total output drops
     Output 0 broadcast packets, 8656 multicast packets
     0 output errors, 0 underruns, 0 applique, 0 resets
     0 output buffer failures, 0 output buffers swapped out
8 carrier transitions
```

In the above show output you will observe that the state of the GigabitEthernet0/0/0/31 is up, and line protocol is up. This is because the speed at both ends is 100Mbps.

Configuring Maximum Interface

Before the Release 24.1.1, the N540-24Q8L2DD-SYS router supports up to 1Tbps speed. This speed can be achieved with a default combination of 2x100GE + 32x25GE interfaces. Ports with high speed bandwidth allows support for lower speed transceivers.

Figure 1: N540-24Q8L2DD-SYS Router Supports up to 1Tbps



Apart from the default combination, to support higher speed bandwidth on the interfaces, you need to reconfigure the controllers so that the maximum speed is still within 1Tbps.

```
Router(config)#controller optics 0/0/0/x
Router(config-Optics)#speed ?
    WORD  1g | 10g | 25g | 40g | 50g | 100g | 200g | 300g | 400g | none
```

Following sample configuration enables up to 1Tbps speed with a combination of 2x400GE + 20x10GE interfaces.

```
/* Configure speed 400g on ports 0 and 1 */
Router(config)#controller optics 0/0/0/0
Router(config-Optics)#speed 400g
Router(config-Optics)#controller optics 0/0/0/1
Router(config-Optics)#speed 400g
```

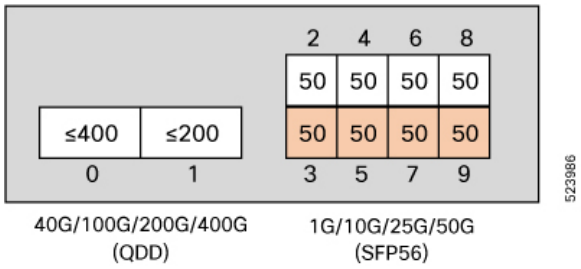
```
/* Configure speed 10g on ports from 2 to 21 */
Router(config-Optics)#controller optics 0/0/0/2
Router(config-Optics)#speed 10g
...
Router(config-Optics)#controller optics 0/0/0/21
Router(config-Optics)#speed 10g

/* Configure speed none on ports from 22 to 33 */
Router(config-Optics)#controller optics 0/0/0/22
Router(config-Optics)#speed none
...
Router(config-Optics)#controller optics 0/0/0/33
Router(config-Optics)#speed none

/* Commit all port configurations with single commit */
Router(config-Optics)#commit
```

Restrictions and Limitations

Depending on the capacity used on the 400GE port, there are only limited combinations with speed restrictions in configuring 50GE ports. Below are some sample combinations on the port restrictions in the N540-24Q8L2DD-SYS router:

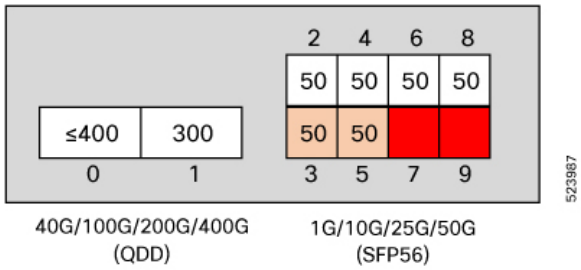
- If a maximum of 200GE is configured on port 1, then ports 3, 5, 7, and 9 supports only 50GE, when 50GE is configured on ports 2, 4, 6, and 8.

Figure 2: Restricted 50GE Support on Ports 3,5,7, and 9



- If a maximum of 300GE is configured on port 1, then:
  - Port 7 is disabled if 50GE is configured on port 6
  - Port 9 is disabled if 50GE is configured on port 8

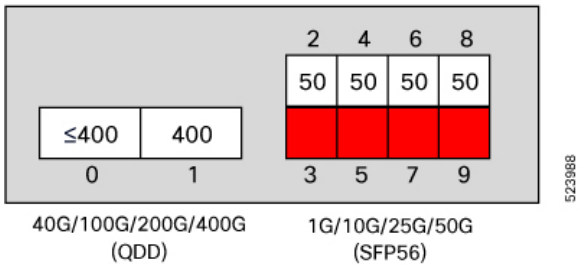
Figure 3: No Support on Ports 7 and 9



- If maximum of 400GE is configured on port 1, then:
  - Port 3 is disabled if 50GE is configured on port 2

- Port 5 is disabled if 50GE is configured on port 4
- Port 7 is disabled if 50GE is configured on port 6
- Port 9 is disabled if 50GE is configured on port 8

Figure 4: No Support on Ports 3,5,7, and 9



Using the negotiation auto command

When you configure the network interface speed using **negotiation auto** command, the speed is autonegotiated with the remote end interface. This command enhances the speed capability to 100M or 1G to be negotiated with the peer.

This sample configuration sets the interface speed to autonegotiate:

Note The interface speed at remote end is set to 100Mbps.

Note From Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.3.2 onwards, autonegotiation is not enabled by default. Use the **negotiation auto** command to enable autonegotiation.

```
#configuration
 (config)#interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0/31
 (config-if)#negotiation auto
 (config-if)#commit
 (config-if)#end
```

Use the **show controller GigE** and **show interface GigE** commands to verify if the speed is autonegotiated:

```
#show interfaces GigabitEthernet 0/0/0/31
GigabitEthernet0/0/0/31 is up, line protocol is up
  Interface state transitions: 10
  Hardware is GigabitEthernet, address is 0035.1a00.e62c (bia 0035.1a00.e62c)
  Internet address is Unknown
  MTU 1514 bytes, BW 100000 Kbit (Max: 100000 Kbit)
     reliability 255/255, txload 0/255, rxload 0/255
  Encapsulation ARPA,
  Full-duplex, 100Mb/s, TFD, link type is autonegotiation
  output flow control is off, input flow control is off
  Carrier delay (up) is 10 msec
  loopback not set,
  Last link flapped 00:00:01
  Last input 00:00:00, output 00:00:00
  Last clearing of "show interface" counters never
```

```
  30 second input rate 1000 bits/sec, 1 packets/sec
  30 second output rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
     91005 packets input, 11687850 bytes, 0 total input drops
     0 drops for unrecognized upper-level protocol
     Received 0 broadcast packets, 91005 multicast packets
              0 runts, 0 giants, 0 throttles, 0 parity
     0 input errors, 0 CRC, 0 frame, 0 overrun, 0 ignored, 0 abort
     61307 packets output, 4350024 bytes, 0 total output drops
     Output 0 broadcast packets, 8668 multicast packets
     0 output errors, 0 underruns, 0 applique, 0 resets
     0 output buffer failures, 0 output buffers swapped out
     15 carrier transitions
```

In the above show output you see that GigabitEthernet0/0/0/31 is up, and line protocol is up.

```
 #show controllers GigabitEthernet 0/0/0/31
Operational data for interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/31:

State:
    Administrative state: enabled
    Operational state: Up
    LED state: Green On

Phy:
    Media type: Four-pair Category 5 UTP PHY, full duplex
    Optics:
        Vendor: CISCO
        Part number: SBCU-5740ARZ-CS1
        Serial number: AVC194525HW
        Wavelength: 0 nm
    Digital Optical Monitoring:
        Transceiver Temp: 0.000 C
        Transceiver Voltage: 0.000 V

        Alarms key: (H) Alarm high, (h) Warning high
                    (L) Alarm low, (l) Warning low
           Wavelength    Tx Power          Rx Power      Laser Bias
        Lane  (nm)     (dBm)     (mW)      (dBm)      (mW)       (mA)
        --   -----    ------    ------     ------    ------     ------
        0     n/a      0.0   1.0000      0.0   1.0000     0.000

        DOM alarms:
            No alarms

        Alarm                     Alarm     Warning   Warning    Alarm
        Thresholds                High       High       Low       Low
                                 -------   -------   -------   -------
        Transceiver Temp (C):      0.000     0.000     0.000     0.000
        Transceiver Voltage (V):   0.000     0.000     0.000     0.000
        Laser Bias (mA):           0.000     0.000     0.000     0.000
        Transmit Power (mW):       1.000     1.000     1.000     1.000
        Transmit Power (dBm):      0.000     0.000     0.000     0.000
        Receive Power (mW):        1.000     1.000     1.000     1.000
        Receive Power (dBm):       0.000     0.000     0.000     0.000
    Statistics:
        FEC:
            Corrected Codeword Count: 0
            Uncorrected Codeword Count: 0

MAC address information:
    Operational address: 0035.1a00.e67c
    Burnt-in address: 0035.1a00.e62c

Autonegotiation enabled:
```

```
    No restricted parameters

Operational values:
    Speed: 100Mbps
    Duplex: Full Duplex
    Flowcontrol: None
    Loopback: None (or external)
    MTU: 1514
    MRU: 1514
    Forward error correction: Disabled
```

Using speed and negotiation auto command

When you configure the speed of the network interface (1G) using the **speed** and **negotiation auto** command, the interface autonegotiates all the paramets (full-duplex and pause) except speed. The speed is forced to the configured value.

This sample shows how to configures Gig interface speed to 100Mbps and autonegotiate other parameters:

Note The interface speed at remote end is set to 100Mbps.

```
#configuration
(config)#interface GigabitEthernet 0/0/0/31
(config-if)#negotiation auto
(config-if)#speed 100
(config-if)#end
```

Use the **show controller GigE** and **show interface GigE** command to verify if the link is up, speed is forced to 100Mbps and autonegotiation is enabled:

```
#show interfaces GigabitEthernet 0/0/0/31
GigabitEthernet0/0/0/31 is up, line protocol is up
  Interface state transitions: 9
  Hardware is GigabitEthernet, address is 0035.1a00.e62c (bia 0035.1a00.e62c)
  Internet address is Unknown
  MTU 1514 bytes, BW 100000 Kbit (Max: 100000 Kbit)
     reliability 255/255, txload 0/255, rxload 0/255
  Encapsulation ARPA,
  Full-duplex, 100Mb/s, TFD, link type is autonegotiation
  output flow control is off, input flow control is off
  Carrier delay (up) is 10 msec
  loopback not set,
  Last link flapped 00:00:03
  Last input 00:00:00, output 00:00:00
  Last clearing of "show interface" counters never
  30 second input rate 0 bits/sec, 1 packets/sec
  30 second output rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
     90968 packets input, 11683189 bytes, 0 total input drops
     0 drops for unrecognized upper-level protocol
     Received 0 broadcast packets, 90968 multicast packets
              0 runts, 0 giants, 0 throttles, 0 parity
     0 input errors, 0 CRC, 0 frame, 0 overrun, 0 ignored, 0 abort
     61287 packets output, 4348541 bytes, 0 total output drops
     Output 0 broadcast packets, 8664 multicast packets
     0 output errors, 0 underruns, 0 applique, 0 resets
     0 output buffer failures, 0 output buffers swapped out
     12 carrier transitions
```

In the above show output you will observe that the GigabitEthernet0/0/0/31 is up, and line protocol is up This is because the speed at both ends is 100Mbps.

```
#show controllers GigabitEthernet 0/0/0/31
Operational data for interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/31:

State:
    Administrative state: enabled
    Operational state: Up
    LED state: Green On

Phy:
    Media type: Four-pair Category 5 UTP PHY, full duplex
    Optics:
        Vendor: CISCO
        Part number: SBCU-5740ARZ-CS1
        Serial number: AVC194525HW
        Wavelength: 0 nm
    Digital Optical Monitoring:
        Transceiver Temp: 0.000 C
        Transceiver Voltage: 0.000 V

        Alarms key: (H) Alarm high, (h) Warning high
                    (L) Alarm low, (l) Warning low
           Wavelength    Tx Power          Rx Power      Laser Bias
        Lane  (nm)     (dBm)     (mW)      (dBm)      (mW)       (mA)
        --   -----    ------    ------     ------    ------     ------
        0     n/a      0.0   1.0000      0.0   1.0000     0.000

        DOM alarms:
            No alarms

        Alarm                      Alarm     Warning   Warning    Alarm
        Thresholds                 High       High       Low       Low
                                  -------    -------   -------   -------
        Transceiver Temp (C):       0.000     0.000     0.000     0.000
        Transceiver Voltage (V):    0.000     0.000     0.000     0.000
        Laser Bias (mA):            0.000     0.000     0.000     0.000
        Transmit Power (mW):        1.000     1.000     1.000     1.000
        Transmit Power (dBm):       0.000     0.000     0.000     0.000
        Receive Power (mW):         1.000     1.000     1.000     1.000
        Receive Power (dBm):        0.000     0.000     0.000     0.000
    Statistics:
        FEC:
            Corrected Codeword Count: 0
            Uncorrected Codeword Count: 0

MAC address information:
    Operational address: 0035.1a00.e67c
    Burnt-in address: 0035.1a00.e62c

Autonegotiation enabled:
    Speed restricted to: 100Mbps  /* autonegotiation is enabled and speed is forced to
100Mbps*/

Operational values:
    Speed: 100Mbps
    Duplex: Full Duplex
    Flowcontrol: None
    Loopback: None (or external)
    MTU: 1514
```

```
MRU: 1514
Forward error correction: Disabled
```

Ethernet MTU

The Ethernet maximum transmission unit (MTU) is the size of the largest frame, minus the 4-byte frame check sequence (FCS), that can be transmitted on the Ethernet network. Every physical network along the destination of a packet can have a different MTU.

Cisco IOS XR software supports two types of frame forwarding processes:

- Fragmentation for IPV4 packets–In this process, IPv4 packets are fragmented as necessary to fit within the MTU of the next-hop physical network.

Note IPv6 does not support fragmentation.

- MTU discovery process determines largest packet size–This process is available for all IPV6 devices, and for originating IPv4 devices. In this process, the originating IP device determines the size of the largest IPv6 or IPV4 packet that can be sent without being fragmented. The largest packet is equal to the smallest MTU of any network between the IP source and the IP destination devices. If a packet is larger than the smallest MTU of all the networks in its path, that packet will be fragmented as necessary. This process ensures that the originating device does not send an IP packet that is too large.

Note To enable hashing for L3 header only when the majority of traffic is fragmented, use the **hw-module profile load-balance algorithm L3-Only** command.

Jumbo frame support is automatically enable for frames that exceed the standard frame size. The default value is 1514 for standard frames and 1518 for 802.1Q tagged frames. These numbers exclude the 4-byte frame check sequence (FCS).

MTU profile support

This table shows the MTU profile limitations, configuration flexibility, and feature support for each platform.

Supported PIDs	Physical Interface MTU	L3 Sub-interface MTU	L2 Sub-interface MTU	MACsec-enabled interfaces
• N540-ACC-SYS • N540X-ACC-SYS • N540-24Z8Q2C-SYS • N540X-16Z4G8Q2C-D/A • N540X-16Z8Q2C-D • N540-28Z4C-SYS-D/A • N540X-12Z16G-SYS-D/A	Each physical port can have a different MTU.	• L3 sub-interfaces on each NPU share a common MTU profile table. • Supports a maximum of 3 different MTU profiles per NPU. • MTU on BVI and tunnel MTU also share the same profile.	Not supported	• MTU is adjusted to compensate for 32 bytes of MACsec header. • If the required MTU offset value is not already programmed, sub-interfaces require a new MTU profile. • One MTU profile each for single-tagged and double-tagged interfaces if present.
• N540-24Q8L2DD-SYS	• Uses a common port MTU profile. • Supports up to 6 different MTU profiles per NPU.	• Uses a common logical interface MTU profile. • Supports up to 7 different profiles per NPU.	Not supported	Uses a port MTU profile if a new off-set value is not already programmed.

Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP)

Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) is a device discovery protocol that runs over Layer 2. Layer 2 is also known as the data link layer that runs on all Cisco-manufactured devices, such as routers, bridges, access servers, and switches. CDP allows the network management applications to automatically discover and learn about other Cisco devices that connect to the network.

To support non-Cisco devices and to allow for interoperability between other devices, it also supports the IEEE 802.1AB LLDP. LLDP is also a neighbor discovery protocol that is used for network devices to advertise

information about themselves to other devices on the network. This protocol runs over the data link layer, which allows two systems running different network layer protocols to learn about each other.

With LLDP, you can also access the information about a particular physical network connection. If you use a non-Cisco monitoring tool (via SNMP,) LLDP helps you identify the Object Identifiers (OIDs) that the system supports. The following are the supported OIDs:

- 1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.4.1.1.4
- 1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.4.1.1.5
- 1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.4.1.1.6
- 1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.4.1.1.7
- 1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.4.1.1.8
- 1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.4.1.1.9
- 1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.4.1.1.10
- 1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.4.1.1.11
- 1.0.8802.1.1.2.1.4.1.1.12

Enabling LLDP Globally

To run LLDP on the router, you must enable it globally. When you enable LLDP globally, all interfaces that support LLDP are automatically enabled for both transmit and receive operations.

You can override this default operation at the interface to disable receive or transmit operations.

The following table describes the global attributes that you can configure:

Attribute	Default	Range	Description
Holdtime	120	0-65535	Specifies the holdtime (in sec) that are sent in packets
Reinit	2	2-5	Delay (in sec) for LLDP initialization on any interface
Timer	30	5-65534	Specifies the rate at which LLDP packets are sent (in sec)

To enable LLDP globally, complete the following steps:

1. `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router # configure`
2. `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config) #lldp`
3. `end or commit`

Running configuration

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router-5#show run lldp
Fri Dec 15 20:36:49.132 UTC
lldp
!

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#show lldp neighbors
Fri Dec 15 20:29:53.763 UTC
Capability codes:
        (R) Router, (B) Bridge, (T) Telephone, (C) DOCSIS Cable Device
        (W) WLAN Access Point, (P) Repeater, (S) Station, (O) Other

Device ID       Local Intf          Hold-time  Capability     Port ID
SW-NOSTG-I11-PUB.cis Mg0/RP0/CPU0/0      120        N/A             Fa0/28

Total entries displayed: 1

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#show lldp neighbors mgmtEth 0/RP0/CPU0/0
Fri Dec 15 20:30:54.736 UTC
Capability codes:
        (R) Router, (B) Bridge, (T) Telephone, (C) DOCSIS Cable Device
        (W) WLAN Access Point, (P) Repeater, (S) Station, (O) Other

Device ID       Local Intf          Hold-time  Capability     Port ID
SW-NOSTG-I11-PUB.cis Mg0/RP0/CPU0/0      120        N/A             Fa0/28

Total entries displayed: 1
```

Enabling LLDP Per Interface

When you enable LLDP globally, all interfaces that support LLDP are automatically enabled for both transmit and receive operations. However, if you want to enable LLDP per interface, perform the following configuration steps:

1. `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# int gigabitEthernet 0/2/0/0`
2. `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# no sh`
3. `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)#commit`
4. `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)#lldp ?`
5. `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)#lldp enable`
6. `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)#commit`

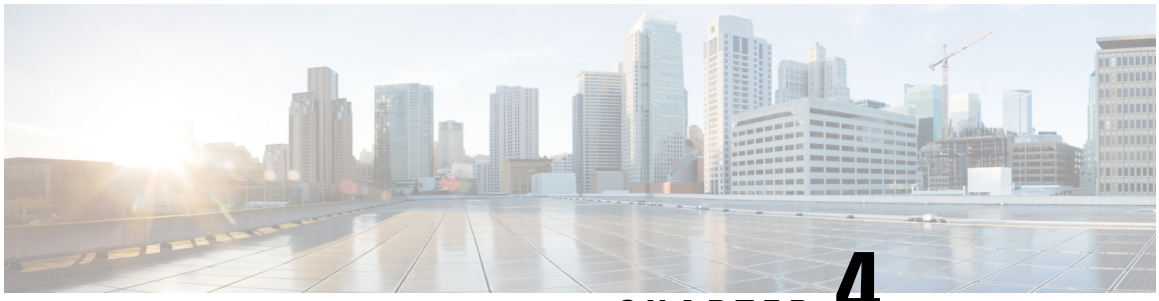
Running configuration

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#sh running-config
Wed Jun 27 12:40:21.274 IST
Building configuration...
!! IOS XR Configuration 0.0.0
!! Last configuration change at Wed Jun 27 00:59:29 2018 by UNKNOWN
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0
 shutdown
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/1
 shutdown
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/2
 shutdown
```

```
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/3
 Shutdown
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/4
 shutdown
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/5
 shutdown
!
end
```

Verification

```
Verifying the config
==================
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#sh lldp interface <===== LLDP enabled only on GigEth0/0/0/3
Wed Jun 27 12:43:26.252 IST


GigabitEthernet0/0/0/3:
        Tx: enabled
        Rx: enabled
        Tx state: IDLE
        Rx state: WAIT FOR FRAME
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show lldp neighbors
Wed Jun 27 12:44:38.977 IST
Capability codes:
        (R) Router, (B) Bridge, (T) Telephone, (C) DOCSIS Cable Device
        (W) WLAN Access Point, (P) Repeater, (S) Station, (O) Other

Device ID       Local Intf          Hold-time  Capability     Port ID
ios             Gi0/0/0/3           120        R              Gi0/0/0/3       <====== LLDP
 enabled only on GigEth0/0/0/3 and neighborship seen for the same.

Total entries displayed: 1

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#
```



CHAPTER 4

Configuring Ethernet OAM

This module describes the configuration of Ethernet Operations, Administration, and Maintenance (OAM) .

- Ethernet OAM, on page 33
- Ethernet CFM, on page 47
- CFM Over Bundles, on page 87
- CFM Adaptive Bandwidth Notifications, on page 88
- CFM with SAT and EDPL, on page 94
- Y.1731 Performance Monitoring, on page 94
- Unidirectional Link Detection Protocol, on page 103
- Ethernet SLA Statistics Measurement in a Profile, on page 107
- Minimum delay bin, on page 111
- Link loss forwarding, on page 114

Ethernet OAM

To configure Ethernet OAM (EOAM), you should understand the following concepts:

Ethernet Link OAM

Table 2: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release	Description
Ethernet Link OAM on Physical Interface— (802.3ah) Link Monitoring and Remote Loopback	Release 7.5.2	Ethernet link OAM operates on a single, physical link and it can be configured to monitor either side or both sides of that link. Ethernet OAM supports: • Link Monitoring, on page 35 • Remote Loopback, on page 35

Ethernet as a Metro Area Network (MAN) or a Wide Area Network (WAN) technology benefits greatly from the implementation of Operations, Administration and Maintenance (OAM) features. Ethernet Link OAM (ELO) features allow you to monitor the quality of the connections on a MAN or a WAN. ELO operates on a single physical link, and it can be configured to monitor either side or both sides of that link.

ELO can be configured in the following ways:

- **Using an ELO profile:** An ELO profile can be configured to set the parameters for multiple interfaces. This simplifies the process of configuring Ethernet Link OAM features on multiple interfaces. An ELO profile and its features can be referenced by other interfaces, allowing them to inherit those features. This is the preferred method of configuring custom ELO settings.
- **Configuring directly on an interface:** Individual ELO features can be configured directly on an interface without being part of a profile. When an interface uses an ELO profile, specific parameters can still be overridden by configuring different values directly on the interface. In such cases, the individually configured features take precedence over the profile settings.

When an ELO packet is received on any one of the Attachment Circuit (AC) interfaces where ELO is not configured, the AC interface multicasts the received packets to other AC interfaces that are part of the Ethernet Virtual Private Network Broadcast Domain (EVPN-BD) to reach the peer. An ELO can be configured on any physical Ethernet interface, including bundle members.

These standard Ethernet Link OAM features are supported on the router:

Neighbor Discovery

Neighbor discovery enables each end of a link to learn the OAM capabilities of the other end and establish an OAM peer relationship. Each end also can require that the peer have certain capabilities before it will establish a session. You can configure certain actions to be taken if there is a capabilities conflict or if a discovery process times out, using the **action capabilities-conflict** or **action discovery-timeout** commands.

EFD

Ethernet Fault Detection (EFD) is a mechanism that allows Ethernet OAM protocols, such as CFM, to control the `line protocol` state of an interface.

Unlike many other interface types, Ethernet interfaces do not have a line protocol, whose state is independent from that of the interface. For Ethernet interfaces, this role is handled by the physical-layer Ethernet protocol itself, and therefore if the interface is physically up, then it is available and traffic can flow.

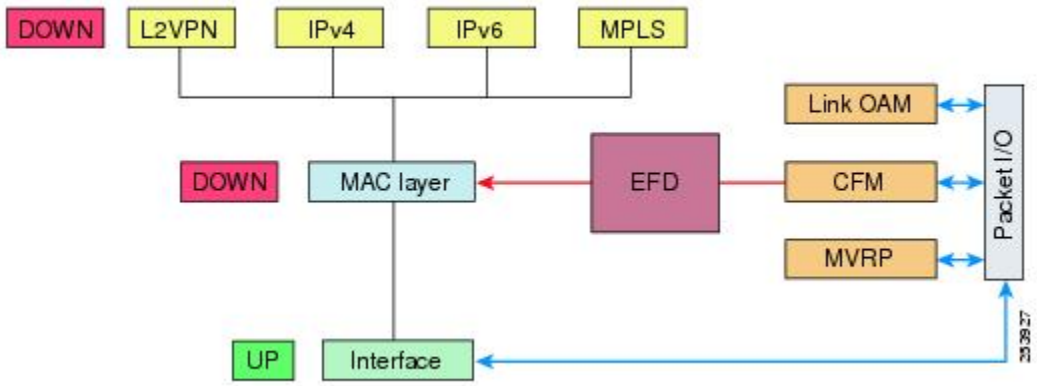
EFD changes this to allow CFM to act as the line protocol for Ethernet interfaces. This allows CFM to control the interface state so that if a CFM defect (such as AIS or loss of continuity) is detected with an expected peer MEP, the interface can be shut down. This not only stops traffic flow, but also triggers actions in any higher-level protocols to route around the problem. For example, in the case of Layer 2 interfaces, the MAC table would be cleared and MSTP would reconverge. For Layer 3 interfaces, the ARP cache would be cleared and potentially the IGP would reconverge.

Note EFD can only be used for down MEPs. When EFD is used to shut down the interface, the CFM frames continue to flow. This allows CFM to detect when the problem has been resolved, and thus bring the interface backup automatically.

This figure shows CFM detection of an error on one of its sessions EFD signaling an error to the corresponding MAC layer for the interface. This triggers the MAC to go to a down state, which further triggers all higher

level protocols (Layer 2 pseudowires, IP protocols, and so on) to go down and also trigger a reconvergence where possible. As soon as CFM detects there is no longer any error, it can signal to EFD and all protocols will once again go active.

Figure 5: CFM Error Detection and EFD Trigger



Link Monitoring

Link monitoring enables an OAM peer to monitor faults that cause the quality of a link to deteriorate over time. When link monitoring is enabled, an OAM peer can be configured to take action when the configured thresholds are exceeded.

MIB Retrieval

MIB retrieval enables an OAM peer on one side of an interface to get the MIB variables from the remote side of the link. The MIB variables that are retrieved from the remote OAM peer are READ ONLY.

Remote Loopback

Remote loopback enables one side of a link to put the remote side of the link into loopback mode for testing. When remote loopback is enabled, all packets initiated by the primary side of the link are looped back to the primary side, unaltered by the remote side. In remote loopback mode, the remote side is not allowed to inject any data into the packets.

SNMP Traps

SNMP traps can be enabled or disabled on an Ethernet OAM interface.

Unidirectional Link Detection Protocol

Unidirectional Link Detection (UDLD) is a single-hop physical link protocol for monitoring an ethernet link, including both point-to-point and shared media links. This is a Cisco-proprietary protocol to detect link problems, which are not detected at the physical link layer. This protocol is specifically targeted at possible wiring errors, when using unbundled fiber links, where there can be a mismatch between the transmitting and receiving connections of a port.

Limitations

- UDLD must not be enabled on a Switched Port Analyzer (SPAN) source or a destination port.
- UDLD must not be enabled on a port that acts as a source or destination port for SPAN.

How to Configure Ethernet OAM

This section provides these configuration procedures:

Configuring Ethernet Link OAM

Custom Ethernet Link OAM (ELO) settings can be configured and shared on multiple interfaces by creating an ELO profile in Ethernet configuration mode and then attaching the profile to individual interfaces. The profile configuration does not take effect until the profile is attached to an interface. After an ELO profile is attached to an interface, individual Ethernet Link OAM features can be configured separately on the interface to override the profile settings when desired.

This section describes how to configure an ELO profile and attach it to an interface.

Configuring an Ethernet Link OAM Profile

Perform these steps to configure an Ethernet Link OAM (ELO) profile.

Note IOS-XR CLI refers to Ethernet Link OAM as **ethernet oam** in both profile and interface configurations.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure terminal`	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	**ethernet oam profile** *profile-name* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ethernet oam profile Profile_1`	Creates a new Ethernet Link OAM (ELO) profile and enters Ethernet OAM configuration mode.
Step 3	**link-monitor** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam)# link-monitor`	Enters the Ethernet OAM link monitor configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	**symbol-period window** *window* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam-lm)# symbol-period window 60000`	(Optional) Configures the window size (in milliseconds) for an Ethernet OAM symbol-period error event. The IEEE 802.3 standard defines the window size as a number of symbols rather than a time duration. These two formats can be converted either way by using a knowledge of the interface speed and encoding. The range is 1000 to 60000. The default value is 1000.
Step 5	**symbol-period threshold low** *threshold* **high** *threshold* **symbol-period threshold** { **ppm** [**low** *threshold*] [**high** *threshold*] | **symbols** [**low** *threshold* [**thousand** | **million** | **billion**]] [**high** *threshold* [**thousand** | **million** | **billion**]]} **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam-lm)# symbol-period threshold ppm low 1 high 1000000`	(Optional) Configures the thresholds (in symbols) that trigger an Ethernet OAM symbol-period error event. The high threshold is optional and is configurable only in conjunction with the low threshold. The range is 1 to 1000000. The default low threshold is 1.
Step 6	**frame window** *window* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam-lm)# frame window 6000`	(Optional) Configures the frame window size (in milliseconds) of an OAM frame error event. The range is from 1000 to 60000. The default value is 1000.
Step 7	**frame threshold low** *threshold* **high** *threshold* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam-lm)# frame threshold low 10000000 high 60000000`	(Optional) Configures the thresholds (in symbols) that triggers an Ethernet OAM frame error event. The high threshold is optional and is configurable only in conjunction with the low threshold. The range is from 0 to 60000000. The default low threshold is 1.

Step 8	**frame-period window** *window*
	Example:
	`RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam-lm)# frame-period window 60000`
	`RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam-lm)# frame-period window milliseconds 60000`
		(Optional) Configures the window size (in milliseconds) for an Ethernet OAM frame-period error event. The IEEE 802.3 standard defines the window size as number of frames rather than a time duration. These two formats can be converted either way by using a knowledge of the interface speed. Note that the conversion assumes that all frames are of the minimum size.
		The range is from 1000 to 60000.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		The default value is 1000. **Note** The only accepted values are multiples of the line card interface module specific polling interval, that is, 1000 milliseconds for most line card interface modules.
Step 9	**frame-period threshold low***threshold* **high** *threshold* **frame-period threshold** { **ppm** [**low** *threshold*] [**high** *threshold*] | **frames** [**low** *threshold* [**thousand** | **million** | **billion**]] [**high** *threshold* [**thousand** | **million** | **billion**]]} **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam-lm)# frame-period threshold ppm low 100 high 1000000`	(Optional) Configures the thresholds (in errors per million frames) that trigger an Ethernet OAM frame-period error event. The frame period window is defined in the IEEE specification as a number of received frames, in our implementation it is x milliseconds. The high threshold is optional and is configurable only in conjunction with the low threshold. The range is from 1 to 1000000. The default low threshold is 1. To obtain the number of frames, the configured time interval is converted to a window size in frames using the interface speed. For example, for a 1Gbps interface, the IEEE defines minimum frame size as 512 bits. So, we get a maximum of approximately 1.5 million frames per second. If the window size is configured to be 8 seconds (8000ms) then this would give us a Window of 12 million frames in the specification's definition of Errored Frame Window. The thresholds for frame-period are measured in errors per million frames. Hence, if you configure a window of 8000ms (that is a window of 12 million frames) and a high threshold of 100, then the threshold would be crossed if there are 1200 errored frames in that period (that is, 100 per million for 12 million).
Step 10	**frame-seconds window** *window* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam-lm)# frame-seconds window 900000`	(Optional) Configures the window size (in milliseconds) for the OAM frame-seconds error event. The range is 10000 to 900000. The default value is 60000. **Note** The only accepted values are multiples of the line card interface module specific polling interval, that is, 1000 milliseconds for most line card interface modules.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 11	**frame-seconds threshold low** *threshold* **high** *threshold* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam-lm)# frame-seconds threshold low 3 high 900`	(Optional) Configures the thresholds (in seconds) that trigger a frame-seconds error event. The high threshold value can be configured only in conjunction with the low threshold value. The range is 1 to 900 The default value is 1.
Step 12	**exit** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam-lm)# exit`	Exits back to Ethernet OAM mode.
Step 13	**mib-retrieval** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam)# mib-retrieval`	Enables MIB retrieval in an Ethernet OAM profile or on an Ethernet OAM interface.
Step 14	**connection timeout** <*timeout*> **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam)# connection timeout 30`	Configures the connection timeout period for an Ethernet OAM session. as a multiple of the hello interval. The range is 2 to 30. The default value is 5.
Step 15	**hello-interval** {**100ms**|**1s**} **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam)# hello-interval 100ms`	Configures the time interval between hello packets for an Ethernet OAM session. The default is 1 second (**1s**).
Step 16	**mode** {**active**|**passive**} **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam)# mode passive`	Configures the Ethernet OAM mode. The default is active.
Step 17	**require-remote mode** {**active**|**passive**} **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam)# require-remote mode active`	Requires that active mode or passive mode is configured on the remote end before the OAM session comes up.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 18	**require-remote mib-retrieval** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam)# require-remote mib-retrieval`	Requires that MIB-retrieval is configured on the remote end before the OAM session comes up.
Step 19	**action capabilities-conflict** {**disable** | **efd** | **error-disable-interface**} **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam)# action capabilities-conflict efd`	Specifies the action that is taken on an interface when a capabilities-conflict event occurs. The default action is to create a syslog entry. **Note** • If you change the default, the **log** keyword option is available in Interface Ethernet OAM configuration mode to override the profile setting and log the event for the interface when it occurs.
Step 20	**action critical-event** {**disable** | **error-disable-interface**} **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam)# action critical-event error-disable-interface`	Specifies the action that is taken on an interface when a critical-event notification is received from the remote Ethernet OAM peer. The default action is to create a syslog entry. **Note** • If you change the default, the **log** keyword option is available in Interface Ethernet OAM configuration mode to override the profile setting and log the event for the interface when it occurs.
Step 21	**action discovery-timeout** {**disable** | **efd** | **error-disable-interface**} **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam)# action discovery-timeout efd`	Specifies the action that is taken on an interface when a connection timeout occurs. The default action is to create a syslog entry. **Note** • If you change the default, the **log** keyword option is available in Interface Ethernet OAM configuration mode to override the profile setting and log the event for the interface when it occurs.
Step 22	**action dying-gasp** {**disable** | **error-disable-interface**} **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam)# action dying-gasp error-disable-interface`	Specifies the action that is taken on an interface when a dying-gasp notification is received from the remote Ethernet OAM peer. The default action is to create a syslog entry. **Note** • If you change the default, the **log** keyword option is available in Interface Ethernet OAM configuration mode to

	Command or Action	Purpose
		override the profile setting and log the event for the interface when it occurs.
Step 23	**action high-threshold** {**error-disable-interface** | **log**} **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam)# action high-threshold error-disable-interface`	Specifies the action that is taken on an interface when a high threshold is exceeded. The default is to take no action when a high threshold is exceeded. **Note** • If you change the default, the **disable** keyword option is available in Interface Ethernet OAM configuration mode to override the profile setting and take no action at the interface when the event occurs.
Step 24	**action session-down** {**disable** | **efd** | **error-disable-interface**} **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam)# action session-down efd`	Specifies the action that is taken on an interface when an Ethernet OAM session goes down. **Note** • If you change the default, the **log** keyword option is available in Interface Ethernet OAM configuration mode to override the profile setting and log the event for the interface when it occurs.
Step 25	**action session-up disable** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam)# action session-up disable`	Specifies that no action is taken on an interface when an Ethernet OAM session is established. The default action is to create a syslog entry. **Note** • If you change the default, the **log** keyword option is available in Interface Ethernet OAM configuration mode to override the profile setting and log the event for the interface when it occurs.
Step 26	**action uni-directional link-fault** {**disable** | **efd** | **error-disable-interface**}	Specifies the action that is taken on an interface when a link-fault notification is received from the remote Ethernet OAM peer. The default action is to create a syslog entry. **Note** • If you change the default, the **log** keyword option is available in Interface Ethernet OAM configuration mode to override the profile setting and log the event for the interface when it occurs.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 27	**action wiring-conflict** {**disable** | **efd** | **log**} **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam)# action session-down efd`	Specifies the action that is taken on an interface when a wiring-conflict event occurs. The default is to put the interface into error-disable state. **Note** • If you change the default, the **error-disable-interface** keyword option is available in Interface Ethernet OAM configuration mode to override the profile setting and put the interface into error-disable state when the event occurs.
Step 28	**uni-directional link-fault detection** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-eoam)# uni-directional link-fault detection`	Enables detection of a local, unidirectional link fault and sends notification of that fault to an Ethernet OAM peer.
Step 29	**commit** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# commit`	Saves the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remains within the configuration session.
Step 30	**end** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# end`	Ends the configuration session and exits to the EXEC mode.

Attaching an Ethernet Link OAM Profile to an Interface

Perform these steps to attach an Ethernet Link OAM (ELO) profile to an interface.

Note IOS-XR CLI refers to Ethernet Link OAM as **ethernet oam** in both profile and interface configurations.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure terminal`	Enters global configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 2	**interface** [| **HundredGigE**| **TenGigE**] *interface-path-id* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface TenGigE 0/0/0/0`	Enters interface configuration mode and specifies the Ethernet interface name and notation *rack/slot/module/port*.
Step 3	**ethernet oam** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ethernet oam`	Enables Ethernet OAM and enters interface Ethernet OAM configuration mode.
Step 4	**profile** *profile-name* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if-eoam)# profile Profile_1`	Attaches the specified Ethernet OAM profile (*profile-name*), and all of its configuration, to the interface.
Step 5	**commit** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# commit`	Saves the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remains within the configuration session.
Step 6	**end** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# end`	Ends the configuration session and exits to the EXEC mode.

Configuring Ethernet Link OAM at an Interface and Overriding the Profile Configuration

Using an Ethernet Link OAM (ELO) profile is an efficient way of configuring multiple interfaces with a common ELO configuration. However, if you want to use a profile but also change the behavior of certain functions for a particular interface, then you can override the profile configuration. To override certain profile settings that are applied to an interface, you can configure that command in interface Ethernet OAM configuration mode to change the behavior for that interface.

In some cases, only certain keyword options are available in interface Ethernet OAM configuration due to the default settings for the command. For example, without any configuration of the **action** commands, several forms of the command have a default behavior of creating a syslog entry when a profile is created and applied to an interface. Therefore, the **log** keyword is not available in Ethernet OAM configuration for these commands in the profile because it is the default behavior. However, the **log** keyword is available in Interface Ethernet OAM configuration if the default is changed in the profile configuration so you can retain the action of creating a syslog entry for a particular interface.

To see all of the default ELO configuration settings, see the Verifying the Ethernet Link OAM Configuration, on page 45 section.

To configure ELO settings at an interface and override the profile configuration, perform these steps.

Note IOS-XR CLI refers to Ethernet Link OAM as **ethernet oam** in both profile and interface configurations.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure terminal`	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	**interface** [HundredGigE | TenGigE] *interface-path-id* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface TenGigE 0/0/0/0`	Enters interface configuration mode and specifies the Ethernet interface name and notation *rack/slot/module/port*. **Note** • The example indicates an 8-port 10-Gigabit Ethernet interface in modular services card slot 1.
Step 3	**ethernet oam** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ethernet oam`	Enables Ethernet OAM and enters interface Ethernet OAM configuration mode.
Step 4	*interface-Ethernet-OAM-command* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if-eoam)# action capabilities-conflict error-disable-interface`	Configures a setting for an Ethernet OAM configuration command and overrides the setting for the profile configuration, where *interface-Ethernet-OAM-command* is one of the supported commands on the platform in interface Ethernet OAM configuration mode.
Step 5	**commit** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# commit`	Saves the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remains within the configuration session.
Step 6	**end** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# end`	Ends the configuration session and exits to the EXEC mode.

Verifying the Ethernet Link OAM Configuration

Use the **show ethernet oam configuration** command to display the values for the Ethernet Link OAM (ELO) configuration for a particular interface, or for all interfaces. The following example shows the default values for ELO settings:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ethernet oam configuration
Thu Aug  5 22:07:06.870 DST
GigabitEthernet0/0/0/0:
  Hello interval:                                          1s
  Mib retrieval enabled:                                    N
  Uni-directional link-fault detection enabled:             N
  Configured mode:                                     Active
  Connection timeout:                                       5
  Symbol period window:                                     0
  Symbol period low threshold:                              1
  Symbol period high threshold:                          None
  Frame window:                                          1000
  Frame low threshold:                                      1
  Frame high threshold:                                  None
  Frame period window:                                   1000
  Frame period low threshold:                               1
  Frame period high threshold:                           None
  Frame seconds window:                                 60000
  Frame seconds low threshold:                              1
  Frame seconds high threshold:                          None
  High threshold action:                                 None
  Link fault action:                                      Log
  Dying gasp action:                                      Log
  Critical event action:                                  Log
  Discovery timeout action:                               Log
  Capabilities conflict action:                           Log
  Wiring conflict action:                        Error-Disable
  Session up action:                                      Log
  Session down action:                                    Log
  Require remote mode:                                 Ignore
  Require remote MIB retrieval:                             N
```

Configuration Examples for Ethernet OAM

This section provides the following configuration examples:

Configuration Examples for Ethernet Link OAM Interfaces

This section provides the following configuration examples:

Configuring an Ethernet Link OAM Profile Globally: Example

This example shows how to configure an Ethernet Link OAM (ELO) profile globally:

```
configure
 ethernet oam profile Profile_1
  link-monitor
   symbol-period window 60000
   symbol-period threshold ppm low 10000000 high 60000000
   frame window 60
   frame threshold ppm low 10000000 high 60000000
   frame-period window 60000
   frame-period threshold ppm low 100 high 12000000
   frame-seconds window 900000
```

```
   frame-seconds threshold low 3 high 900
   exit
  mib-retrieval
  connection timeout 30
  require-remote mode active
  require-remote mib-retrieval
  action dying-gasp error-disable-interface
  action critical-event error-disable-interface
  action discovery-timeout error-disable-interface
  action session-down error-disable-interface
  action capabilities-conflict error-disable-interface
  action wiring-conflict error-disable-interface
  action remote-loopback error-disable-interface
  commit
```

Configuring Ethernet Link OAM Features on an Individual Interface: Example

This example shows how to configure Ethernet Link OAM (ELO) features on an individual interface:

```
configure terminal
 interface TenGigE 0/0/0/0
  ethernet oam
   link-monitor
    symbol-period window 60000
    symbol-period threshold ppm low 10000000 high 60000000
    frame window 60
    frame threshold ppm low 10000000 high 60000000
    frame-period window 60000
    frame-period threshold ppm low 100 high 12000000
    frame-seconds window 900000
    frame-seconds threshold low 3 high 900
    exit
   mib-retrieval
   connection timeout 30
   require-remote mode active
   require-remote mib-retrieval
   action link-fault  error-disable-interface
   action dying-gasp error-disable-interface
   action critical-event error-disable-interface
   action discovery-timeout error-disable-interface
   action session-down error-disable-interface
   action capabilities-conflict error-disable-interface
   action wiring-conflict error-disable-interface
   action remote-loopback error-disable-interface
   commit
```

Configuring Ethernet Link OAM Features to Override the Profile on an Individual Interface: Example

This example shows the configuration of Ethernet Link OAM (ELO) features in a profile followed by an override of that configuration on an interface:

```
configure terminal
 ethernet oam profile Profile_1
  mode passive
  action dying-gasp disable
  action critical-event disable
  action discovery-timeout disable
  action session-up disable
  action session-down disable
  action capabilities-conflict disable
  action wiring-conflict disable
  action remote-loopback disable
```

```
  action uni-directional link-fault error-disable-interface
  commit

configure terminal
 interface TenGigE 0/0/0/0
  ethernet oam
   profile Profile_1
    mode active
    action dying-gasp log
    action critical-event log
    action discovery-timeout log
    action session-up log
    action session-down log
    action capabilities-conflict log
    action wiring-conflict log
    action remote-loopback log
    action uni-directional link-fault log
    uni-directional link-fault detection
    commit
```

Clearing Ethernet Link OAM Statistics on an Interface: Example

This example shows how to clear Ethernet Link OAM (ELO) statistics on an interface:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# clear ethernet oam statistics interface gigabitethernet 0/0/0/1
```

Enabling SNMP Server Traps on a Router: Example

This example shows how to enable SNMP server traps on a router:

```
configure terminal
 snmp-server traps ethernet oam events
```

Ethernet CFM

Ethernet Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) is a service-level OAM protocol that provides tools for monitoring and troubleshooting end-to-end Ethernet services per VLAN. This includes proactive connectivity monitoring, fault verification, and fault isolation. CFM uses standard Ethernet frames and can be run on any physical media that is capable of transporting Ethernet service frames. Unlike most other Ethernet protocols which are restricted to a single physical link, CFM frames can transmit across the entire end-to-end Ethernet network.

CFM is defined in two standards:

- IEEE 802.1ag—Defines the core features of the CFM protocol.
- ITU-T Y.1731—Redefines, but maintains compatibility with the features of IEEE 802.1ag, and defines some additional features.

Starting with Cisco IOS XR Release 7.3.1, IEEE 802.1ag is supported on the following Cisco NCS 540 variants:

- N540X-6Z18G-SYS-A
- N540X-6Z18G-SYS-D
- N540X-8Z16G-SYS-A

- N540X-8Z16G-SYS-D

Ethernet CFM supports these functions of ITU-T Y.1731:

- ETH-CC, ETH-RDI, ETH-LB, ETH-LT, ETH-BNM, ETH-CSF—These are equivalent to the corresponding features defined in IEEE 802.1ag.

Note The Linktrace responder procedures defined in IEEE 802.1ag are used rather than the procedures defined in Y.1731; however, these are interoperable.

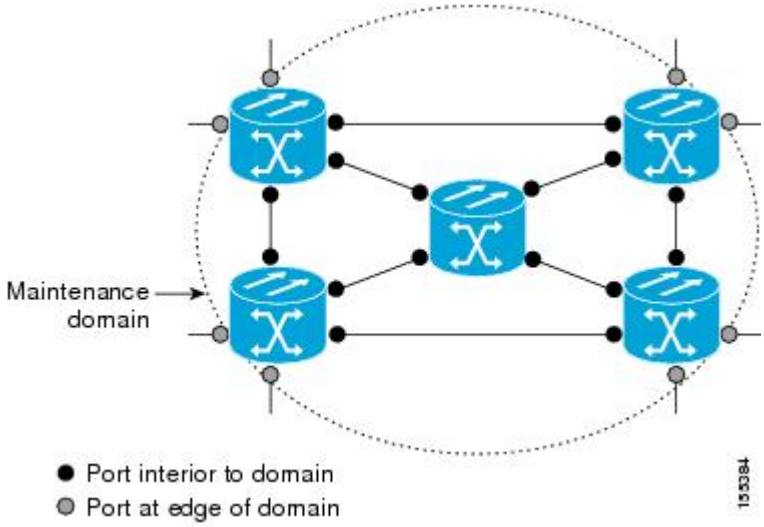
- ETH-AIS—The reception of ETH-LCK messages is also supported.

To understand how the CFM maintenance model works, you need to understand these concepts and features:

Maintenance Domains

A maintenance domain describes a management space for the purpose of managing and administering a network. A domain is owned and operated by a single entity and defined by the set of interfaces internal to it and at its boundary, as shown in this figure.

Figure 6: CFM Maintenance Domain



A maintenance domain is defined by the bridge ports that are provisioned within it. Domains are assigned maintenance levels, in the range of 0 to 7, by the administrator. The level of the domain is useful in defining the hierarchical relationships of multiple domains.

CFM maintenance domains allow different organizations to use CFM in the same network, but independently. For example, consider a service provider who offers a service to a customer, and to provide that service, they use two other operators in segments of the network. In this environment, CFM can be used in the following ways:

- The customer can use CFM between their CE devices, to verify and manage connectivity across the whole network.

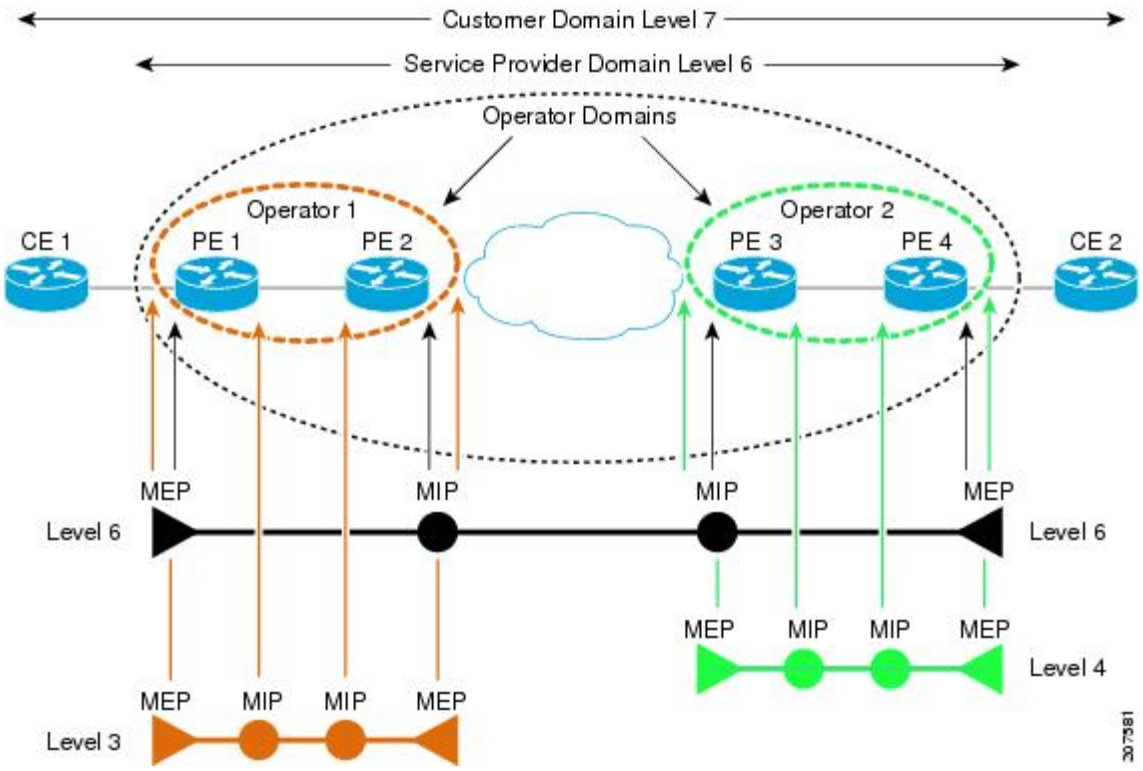
- The service provider can use CFM between their PE devices, to verify and manage the services they are providing.
- Each operator can use CFM within their operator network, to verify and manage connectivity within their network.

Each organization uses a different CFM maintenance domain.

This figure shows an example of the different levels of maintenance domains in a network.

Note In CFM diagrams, the conventions are that triangles represent MEPs, pointing in the direction that the MEP sends CFM frames, and circles represent MIPs.

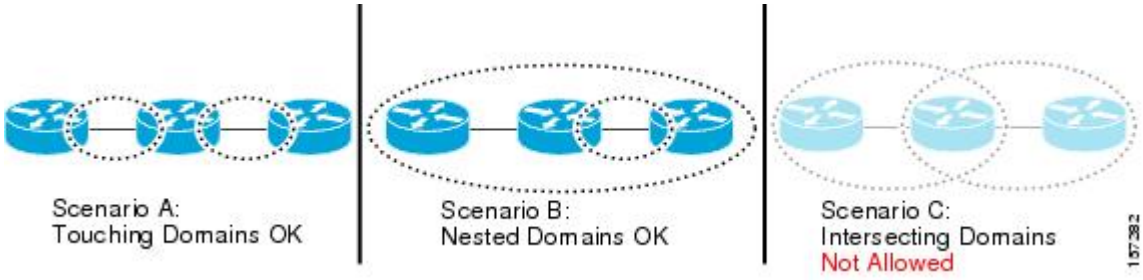
Figure 7: Different CFM Maintenance Domains Across a Network



To ensure that the CFM frames for each domain do not interfere with each other, each domain is assigned a maintenance level, between 0 and 7. Where domains are nested, as in this example, the encompassing domain must have a higher level than the domain it encloses. In this case, the domain levels must be negotiated between the organizations involved. The maintenance level is carried in all CFM frames that relate to that domain.

CFM maintenance domains may touch or nest, but cannot intersect. This figure illustrates the supported structure for touching and nested domains, and the unsupported intersection of domains.

Figure 8: Supported CFM Maintenance Domain Structure



Services

A CFM service allows an organization to partition its CFM maintenance domain, according to the connectivity within the network. For example, if the network is divided into a number of virtual LANs (VLANs), a CFM service is created for each of these. CFM can then operate independently in each service. It is important that the CFM services match the network topology, so that CFM frames relating to one service cannot be received in a different service. For example, a service provider may use a separate CFM service for each of their customers, to verify and manage connectivity between that customer's end points.

A CFM service is always associated with the maintenance domain that it operates within, and therefore with that domain's maintenance level. All CFM frames relating to the service carry the maintenance level of the corresponding domain.

Note CFM Services are referred to as *Maintenance Associations* in IEEE 802.1ag and as *Maintenance Entity Groups* in ITU-T Y.1731.

Maintenance Points

A CFM Maintenance Point (MP) is an instance of a particular CFM service on a specific interface. CFM only operates on an interface if there is a CFM maintenance point on the interface; otherwise, CFM frames are forwarded transparently through the interface.

A maintenance point is always associated with a particular CFM service, and therefore with a particular maintenance domain at a particular level. Maintenance points generally only process CFM frames at the same level as their associated maintenance domain. Frames at a higher maintenance level are always forwarded transparently, while frames at a lower maintenance level are normally dropped. This helps enforce the maintenance domain hierarchy, and ensures that CFM frames for a particular domain cannot leak out beyond the boundary of the domain.

There are two types of MP:

- Maintenance End Points (MEPs)—Created at the edge of the domain. Maintenance end points (MEPs) are members of a particular service within a domain and are responsible for sourcing and sinking CFM frames. They periodically transmit continuity check messages and receive similar messages from other MEPs within their domain. They also transmit traceroute and loopback messages at the request of the administrator. MEPs are responsible for confining CFM messages within the domain.

- Maintenance Intermediate Points (MIPs)—Created in the middle of the domain. Unlike MEPS, MIPs do allow CFM frames at their own level to be forwarded.

MIP Creation

Unlike MEPs, MIPs are not explicitly configured on each interface. MIPs are created automatically according to the algorithm specified in the CFM 802.1ag standard. The algorithm, in brief, operates as follows for each interface:

- The bridge-domain or cross-connect for the interface is found, and all services associated with that bridge-domain or cross-connect are considered for MIP auto-creation.
- The level of the highest-level MEP on the interface is found. From among the services considered above, the service in the domain with the lowest level that is higher than the highest MEP level is selected. If there are no MEPs on the interface, the service in the domain with the lowest level is selected.
- The MIP auto-creation configuration (**mip auto-create** command) for the selected service is examined to determine whether a MIP should be created.

Note Configuring a MIP auto-creation policy for a service does not guarantee that a MIP will automatically be created for that service. The policy is only considered if that service is selected by the algorithm first.

MEP and CFM Processing Overview

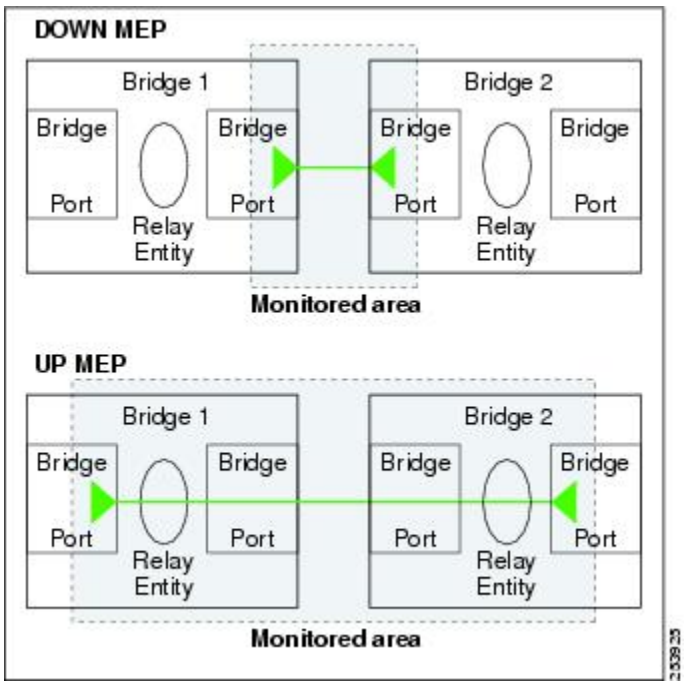
The boundary of a domain is an interface, rather than a bridge or host. Therefore, MEPs can be sub-divided into two categories:

- Down MEPs—Send CFM frames from the interface where they are configured, and process CFM frames received on that interface. Down MEPs transmit AIS messages upward (toward the cross-connect).
- Up MEPs—Send frames into the bridge relay function, as if they had been received on the interface where the MEP is configured. They process CFM frames that have been received on other interfaces, and have been switched through the bridge relay function as if they are going to be sent out of the interface where the MEP is configured. Up MEPs transmit AIS messages downward (toward the wire). However, AIS packets are only sent when there is a MIP configured on the same interface as the MEP and at the level of the MIP.

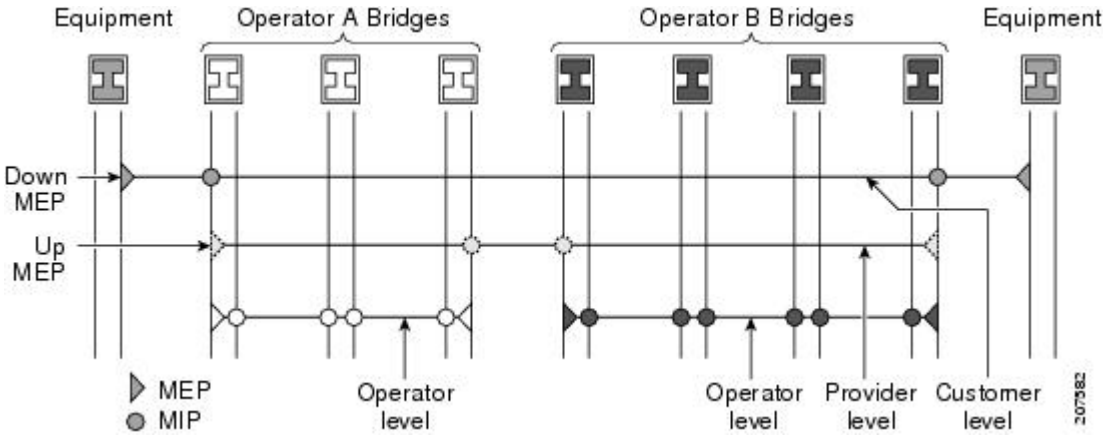
Note The terms *Down MEP* and *Up MEP* are defined in the IEEE 802.1ag and ITU-T Y.1731 standards, and refer to the direction that CFM frames are sent from the MEP. The terms should not be confused with the operational status of the MEP.

This figure illustrates the monitored areas for Down and Up MEPs.

Figure 9: Monitored Areas for Down and Up MEPs



This figure shows maintenance points at different levels. Because domains are allowed to nest but not intersect (see Supported CFM Maintenance Domain Structure), a MEP at a low level always corresponds with a MEP or MIP at a higher level. In addition, only a single MIP is allowed on any interface—this is generally created in the lowest domain that exists at the interface and that does not have a MEP.



MIPs and Up MEPs can only exist on switched (Layer 2) interfaces, because they send and receive frames from the bridge relay function. Down MEPs can be created on switched (Layer 2) interfaces.

MEPs continue to operate normally if the interface they are created on is blocked by the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP); that is, CFM frames at the level of the MEP continue to be sent and received, according to the direction of the MEP. MEPs never allow CFM frames at the level of the MEP to be forwarded, so the STP block is maintained.

MIPs also continue to receive CFM frames at their level if the interface is STP blocked, and can respond to any received frames. However, MIPs do not allow CFM frames at the level of the MIP to be forwarded if the interface is blocked.

Note A separate set of CFM maintenance levels is created every time a VLAN tag is pushed onto the frame. Therefore, if CFM frames are received on an interface which pushes an additional tag, so as to "tunnel" the frames over part of the network, the CFM frames will not be processed by any MPs within the tunnel, even if they are at the same level. For example, if a CFM MP is created on an interface with an encapsulation that matches a single VLAN tag, any CFM frames that are received at the interface that have two VLAN tags will be forwarded transparently, regardless of the CFM level.

CFM Protocol Messages

The CFM protocol consists of a number of different message types, with different purposes. All CFM messages use the CFM EtherType, and carry the CFM maintenance level for the domain to which they apply.

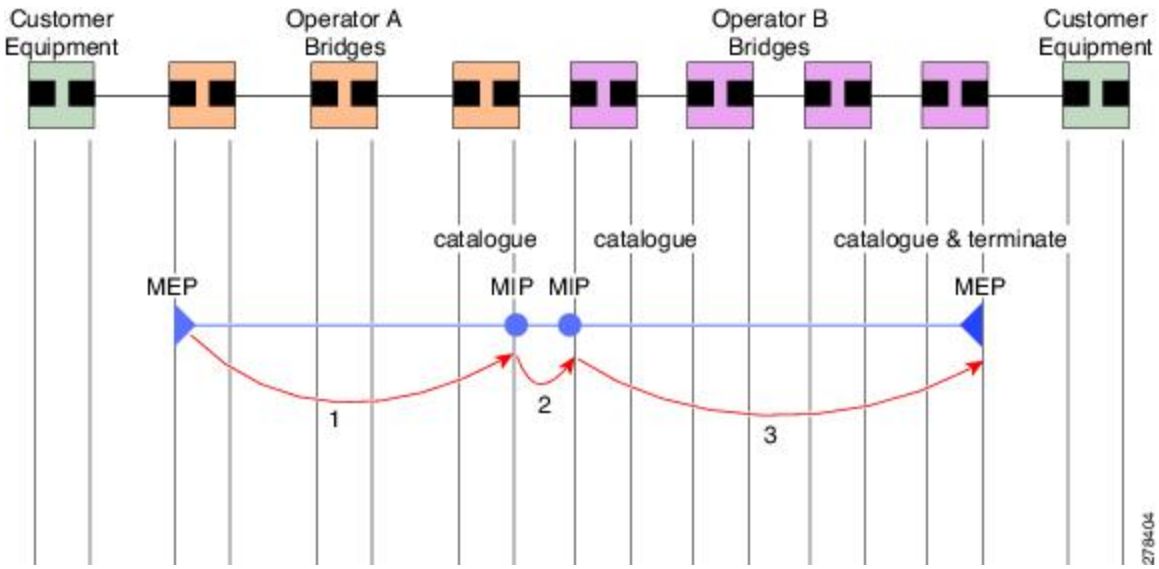
This section describes the following CFM messages:

Continuity Check (IEEE 802.1ag and ITU-T Y.1731)

Continuity Check Messages (CCMs) are "heartbeat" messages exchanged periodically between all the MEPs in a service. Each MEP sends out multicast CCMs, and receives CCMs from all the other MEPs in the service—these are referred to as *peer MEPs*. This allows each MEP to discover its peer MEPs, and to verify that there is connectivity between them.

MIPs also receive CCMs. MIPs use the information to build a MAC learning database that is used when responding to Linktrace. For more information about Linktrace, see Linktrace (IEEE 802.1ag and ITU-T Y.1731).

Figure 10: Continuity Check Message Flow



All the MEPs in a service must transmit CCMs at the same interval. The interval at which CCMs are being transmitted is called CCM interval. IEEE 802.1ag defines 7 possible intervals that can be used:

- 3.3ms
- 10ms
- 100ms
- 1s
- 10s
- 1 minute
- 10 minutes

A MEP detects a loss of connectivity with one of its peer MEPs when a certain number of CCMs have been missed. This occurs when sufficient time has passed during which a certain number of CCMs were expected, given the CCM interval. This number is called the *loss threshold*, and is usually set to 3.

CFM is supported only on interfaces which have Layer 2 transport feature enabled.

Maintenance Association Identifier (MAID)

Continuity Check Messages (CCM) are essential for detecting various defects in network services. They carry critical information that helps in the identification and maintenance of the service. This is a breakdown of the information contained in CCM messages:

- **Maintenance Domain Identifier (MDID):** A configured identifier unique to the domain of the transmitting Maintenance End Point (MEP). It is crucial for the identification of the maintenance domain.
- **Short MA Name (SMAN):** A configured identifier specific to the service of the transmitting MEP. It is used to identify the service within the maintenance domain.
- **Maintenance Association Identifier (MAID):** A combination of MDID and SMAN. Together, these identifiers form the MAID, which is a composite identifier that must be uniformly configured across all MEPs within the same service.

Note MDID **only** supports **null** value and SMAN supports ITU Carrier Code (ICC) or a numerical. No other values are supported.

Supported MAID Formats for Offloaded MEPs (applicable for NCS 5700 line cards only)

- No Domain Name Format
  - MD Name Format = 1-NoDomainName
  - Short MA Name Format = 3 - 2 bytes integer value
  - Short MA NAme Length = 2 - fixed length
  - Short MA Name = 2 bytes of integer
- 1731 Maid Format

- MD Name Format = 1-NoDomainName
- MA Name Format(MEGID Format) = 32
- MEGID Length = 13 - fixed length
- MEGID(ICCCode) = 6 Bytes
- MEGID(UMC) = 7 Bytes
- ITU Carrier Code (ICC) - Number of different configurable ICC code - 15 (for each NPU)
- Unique MEG ID Code (UMC) - 4

These are some examples:

- Configuring domain ID null: **ethernet cfm domain SMB level 3 id null**
- Configuring SMAN: **ethernet cfm domain SMB level 3 id null service 901234AB xconnect group 99999 p2p 99999 id number 1**

This table summarizes the supported values and parameters for MDID and SMAN. This table only details the MAID restriction on the hardware offload feature. There is no MAID restriction for software offload or non-offloaded MEPs.

Format	MDID	SMAN	Support	Comment
	No	2 byte integer	Yes	Up to 2000 entries
	No	13 bytes ICCCode (6 bytes) and UMC (7 bytes)	Yes	Up to 15 unique ICC Up to 4K UMC values
48 bytes string based	1-48 bytes of MDID and SMAN		No	Most commonly used

Guidelines and Restrictions for MAID

- Configure each MEP within the service with a distinct MEP ID, which is a unique numeric identifier.
- Configure MEP CrossCheck for all MEPs with intervals of less than 10s, as Dynamic Remote MEPs are not supported for these.
- In a Remote Defect Indication (RDI), each MEP includes sequence number in the CCMs it is sending, if it has detected a defect relating to the CCMs it is receiving. This notifies all the MEPs in the service that a defect has been detected somewhere in the service. Sequence numbering is not supported for MEPs with CCM intervals of less than 10s.
- CCM Tx/Rx statistics counters are not supported for MEPs with less than 10s intervals.
- Sender TLV and Cisco Proprietary TLVs are not supported for MEPs with less than 10s intervals.
- The status of the interface where the MEP is operating (for example, up - when the interface is up, or down - when the interface is down) should not be confused with the direction of any MEPs on the interface (Up MEPs/Down MEPs).

Defect Identification using CCM Analysis

These defects can be detected from the received CCMs:

- Interval mismatch: The CCM interval in the received CCM does not match the interval that the MEP is configured to send CCMs.
- Level mismatch: A MEP receives a CCM carrying a lower maintenance level than the MEP's own configured level.
- Loop: A CCM is received with a source MAC address that matches the MAC address of the MEP's operating interface, indicating a loop.
- Configuration error: A received CCM contains a MEP ID that duplicates the MEP ID of the receiving MEP, signaling a configuration issue.
- Cross-connect error: A CCM with a non-matching MAID is received, often pointing to a VLAN misconfiguration that causes service leakage.
- Peer interface down: A CCM is received that indicates the interface on the peer is down.
- Remote defect indication: A CCM is received carrying a remote defect indication. This does not trigger the local MEP to send out CCMs with a remote defect indication.

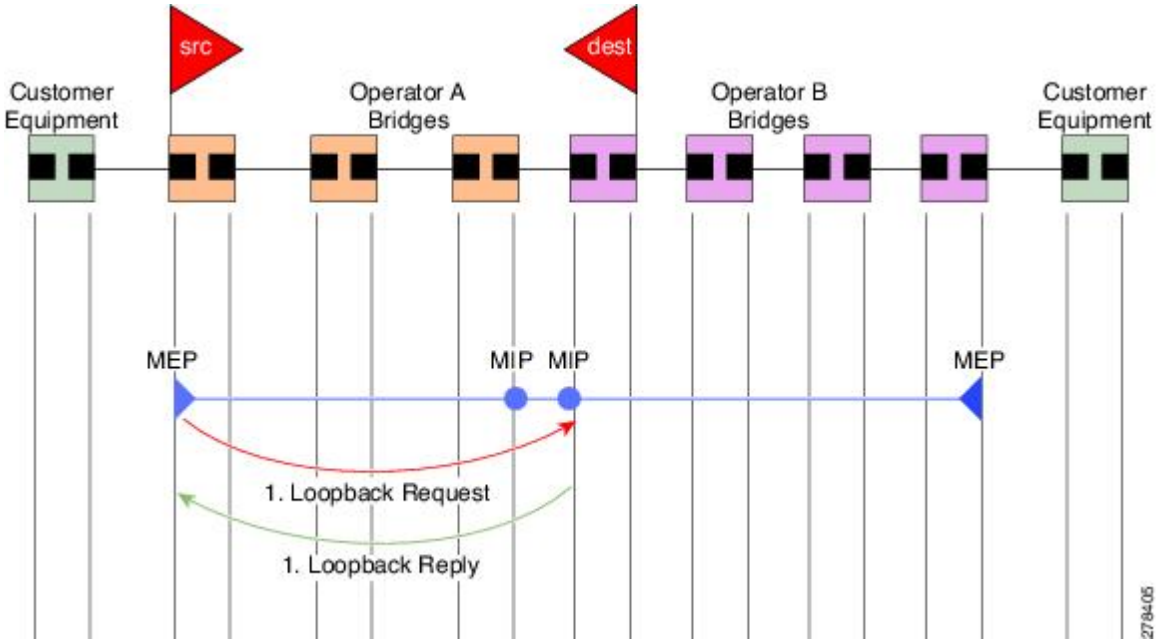
By monitoring the sequence numbers in CCMs from peer MEPs, out-of-sequence CCMs can be identified, although these are not classified as CCM defects.

Loopback (IEEE 802.1ag and ITU-T Y.1731)

Loopback Messages (LBM) and Loopback Replies (LBR) are used to verify connectivity between a local MEP and a particular remote MP. At the request of the administrator, a local MEP sends unicast LBMs to the remote MP. On receiving each LBM, the target maintenance point sends an LBR back to the originating MEP. Loopback indicates whether the destination is reachable or not—it does not allow hop-by-hop discovery of the path. It is similar in concept to an ICMP Echo (ping). Since loopback messages are destined for unicast addresses, they are forwarded like normal data traffic, while observing the maintenance levels. At each device that the loopback reaches, if the outgoing interface is known (in the bridge's forwarding database), then the frame is sent out on that interface. If the outgoing interface is not known, then the message is flooded on all interfaces.

This figure shows an example of CFM loopback message flow between a MEP and MIP.

Figure 11: Loopback Messages



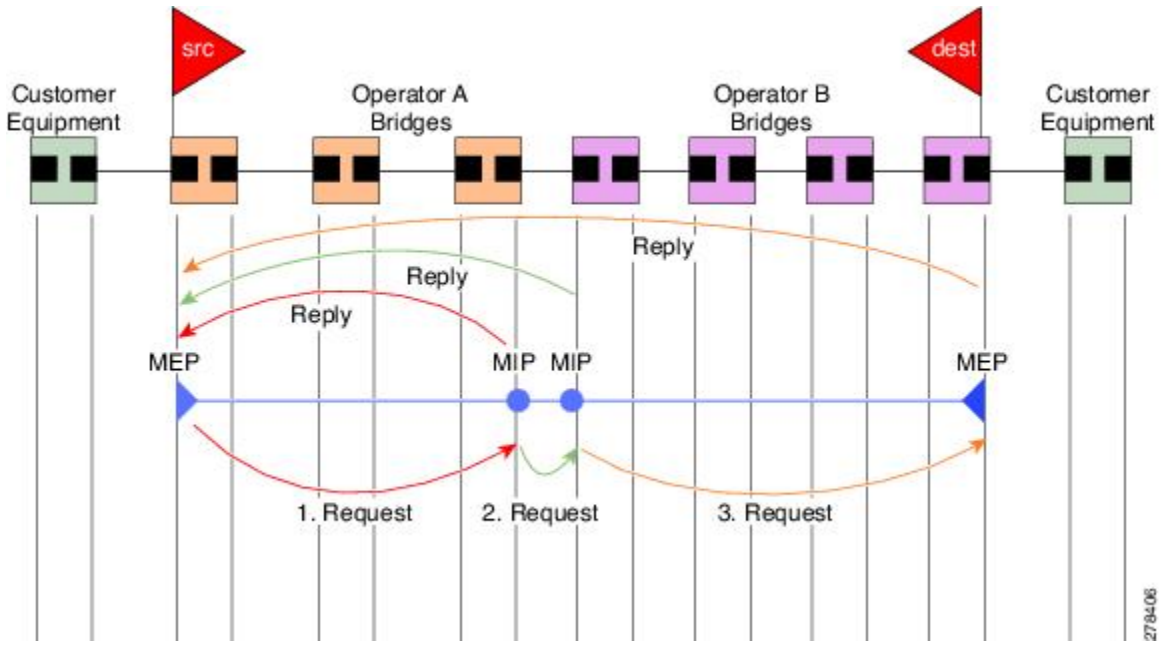
Loopback messages can be padded with user-specified data. This allows data corruption to be detected in the network. They also carry a sequence number which allows for out-of-order frames to be detected.

Linktrace (IEEE 802.1ag and ITU-T Y.1731)

Linktrace Messages (LTM) and Linktrace Replies (LTR) are used to track the path (hop-by-hop) to a unicast destination MAC address. At the request of the operator, a local MEP sends an LTM. Each hop where there is a maintenance point sends an LTR back to the originating MEP. This allows the administrator to discover connectivity data about the path. It is similar in concept to IP traceroute, although the mechanism is different. In IP traceroute, successive probes are sent, whereas CFM Linktrace uses a single LTM which is forwarded by each MP in the path. LTMs are multicast, and carry the unicast target MAC address as data within the frame. They are intercepted at each hop where there is a maintenance point, and either retransmitted or dropped to discover the unicast path to the target MAC address.

This figure shows an example of CFM linktrace message flow between MEPs and MIPs.

Figure 12: Linktrace Message Flow



The linktrace mechanism is designed to provide useful information even after a network failure. This allows it to be used to locate failures, for example after a loss of continuity is detected. To achieve this, each MP maintains a CCM Learning Database. This maps the source MAC address for each received CCM to the interface through which the CCM was received. It is similar to a typical bridge MAC learning database, except that it is based only on CCMs and it times out much more slowly—on the order of days rather than minutes.

Note In IEEE 802.1ag, the CCM Learning Database is referred to as the MIP CCM Database. However, it applies to both MIPs and MEPs.

In IEEE 802.1ag, when an MP receives an LTM message, it determines whether to send a reply using the following steps:

1. The target MAC address in the LTM is looked up in the bridge MAC learning table. If the MAC address is known, and therefore the egress interface is known, then an LTR is sent.
2. If the MAC address is not found in the bridge MAC learning table, then it is looked up in the CCM learning database. If it is found, then an LTR is sent.
3. If the MAC address is not found, then no LTR is sent (and the LTM is not forwarded).

If the target MAC has never been seen previously in the network, the linktrace operation will not produce any results.

Note IEEE 802.1ag and ITU-T Y.1731 define slightly different linktrace mechanisms. In particular, the use of the CCM learning database and the algorithm described above for responding to LTM messages are specific to IEEE 802.1ag. IEEE 802.1ag also specifies additional information that can be included in LTRs. Regardless of the differences, the two mechanisms are interoperable.

Configurable Logging

CFM supports logging of various conditions to syslog. Logging can be enabled independently for each service, and when the following conditions occur:

- New peer MEPs are detected, or loss of continuity with a peer MEP occurs.
- Changes to the CCM defect conditions are detected.
- Cross-check “missing” or “unexpected” conditions are detected.
- AIS condition detected (AIS messages received) or cleared (AIS messages no longer received).
- EFD used to shut down an interface, or bring it back up.

Flexible VLAN Tagging for CFM

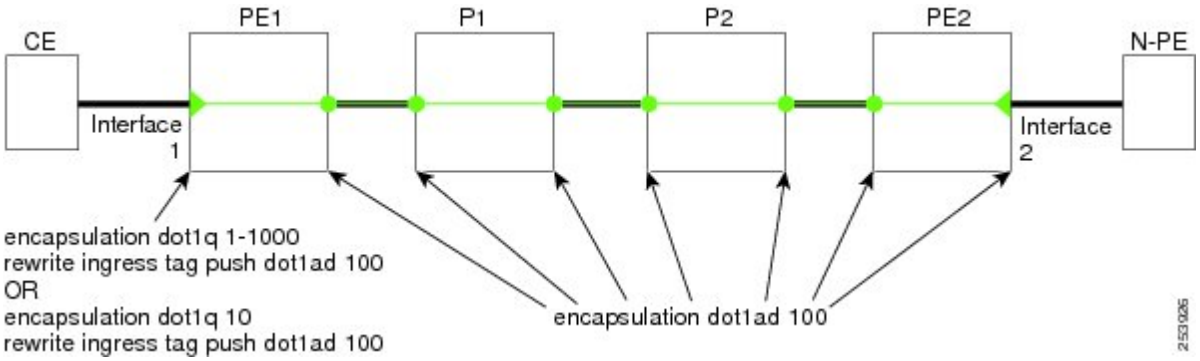
The Flexible VLAN Tagging for CFM feature ensures that CFM packets are sent with the right VLAN tags so that they are appropriately handled as a CFM packet by the remote device. When packets are received by an edge router, they are treated as either CFM packets or data packets, depending on the number of tags in the header. The system differentiates between CFM packets and data packets based on the number of tags in the packet, and forwards the packets to the appropriate paths based on the number of tags in the packet.

CFM frames are normally sent with the same VLAN tags as the corresponding customer data traffic on the interface, as defined by the configured encapsulation and tag rewrite operations. Likewise, received frames are treated as CFM frames if they have the correct number of tags as defined by the configured encapsulation and tag rewrite configuration, and are treated as data frames (that is, they are forwarded transparently) if they have more than this number of tags.

In most cases, this behavior is as desired, since the CFM frames are then treated in exactly the same way as the data traffic flowing through the same service. However, in a scenario where multiple customer VLANs are multiplexed over a single multipoint provider service (for example, N:1 bundling), a different behavior might be desirable.

This figure shows an example of a network with multiple VLANS using CFM.

Figure 13: Service Provider Network With Multiple VLANs and CFM



This figure shows a provider's access network, where the S-VLAN tag is used as the service delimiter. PE1 faces the customer, and PE2 is at the edge of the access network facing the core. N:1 bundling is used, so the interface encapsulation matches a range of C-VLAN tags. This could potentially be the full range, resulting in all:1 bundling. There is also a use case where only a single C-VLAN is matched, but the S-VLAN is nevertheless used as the service delimiter—this is more in keeping with the IEEE model, but limits the provider to 4094 services.

CFM is used in this network with a MEP at each end of the access network, and MIPs on the boxes within the network (if it is native Ethernet). In the normal case, CFM frames are sent by the up MEP on PE1 with two VLAN tags, matching the customer data traffic. This means that at the core interfaces and at the MEP on PE2, the CFM frames are forwarded as if they were customer data traffic, since these interfaces match only on the S-VLAN tag. So, the CFM frames sent by the MEP on PE1 are not seen by any of the other MPs.

Flexible VLAN tagging changes the encapsulation for CFM frames that are sent and received at Up MEPs. Flexible VLAN tagging allows the frames to be sent from the MEP on PE1 with just the S-VLAN tag that represents the provider service. If this is done, the core interfaces will treat the frames as CFM frames and they will be seen by the MIPs and by the MEP on PE2. Likewise, the MEP on PE1 should handle received frames with only one tag, as this is what it will receive from the MEP on PE2.

To ensure that CFM packets from Up MEPs are routed to the appropriate paths successfully, tags may be set to a specific number in a domain service, using the **tags** command. Currently, tags can only be set to one (1).

Configuring Ethernet CFM

Note CFM is not supported for the following:

- L3 Interfaces and Sub-Interfaces
- Bundle Member Ports
- EVPN-FXC
- Bridge Domain
- VPLS

Configuring a CFM Maintenance Domain

To configure a CFM maintenance domain, perform the following steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure`	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	**ethernet cfm** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ethernet cfm`	Enters Ethernet Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) configuration mode.
Step 3	**traceroute cache hold-time** *minutes* **size** *entries* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm)# traceroute cache hold-time 1 size 3000`	(Optional) Sets the maximum limit of traceroute cache entries or the maximum time limit to hold the traceroute cache entries. The default is 100 minutes and 100 entries.
Step 4	**domain** *domain-name* **level** *level-value* [**id** [**null**] [**dns** *DNS-name*] [**mac** *H.H.H*] [**string** *string*]] **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm)# domain Domain_One level 1 id string D1`	Creates and names a container for all domain configurations and enters CFM domain configuration mode. The level must be specified. The **id** is the maintenance domain identifier (MDID) and is used as the first part of the maintenance association identifier (MAID) in CFM frames. If the MDID is not specified, the domain name is used as the MDID by default.
Step 5	**end** or **commit** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn)# commit`	Saves configuration changes. • When you use the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes: `Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:` • Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode. • Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode

	Command or Action	Purpose
		without committing the configuration changes. • Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes. • Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Configuring Services for a CFM Maintenance Domain

You can configure up to 2000 CFM services for a maintenance domain. To configure services for a CFM maintenance domain, perform the following steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure`	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	**ethernet cfm** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ethernet cfm`	Enters Ethernet CFM configuration mode.
Step 3	**domain** *domain-name* **level** *level-value* [**id** [**null**] [**dns** *DNS-name*] [**mac** *H.H.H*] [**string** *string*]] **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm)# domain Domain_One level 1 id string D1`	Creates and names a container for all domain configurations at a specified maintenance level, and enters CFM domain configuration mode. The **id** is the maintenance domain identifier (MDID) and is used as the first part of the maintenance association identifier (MAID) in CFM frames. If the MDID is not specified, the domain name is used as the MDID by default.
Step 4	**service** *service-name* {**down-meps** | **xconnect group** *xconnect-group-name* **m2mp** | **p2p** *xconnect-name*}[**id** [**icc-based** *icc-string umc-string*] | [[**number** *number*] **Example:**	Configures and associates a service with the domain and enters CFM domain service configuration mode. You can specify that the service is used only for down MEPs, or associate the service with a bridge domain where MIPs and up MEPs will be created.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn)# service ABC xconnect group X1 p2p ADB`	The **id** sets the short MA name.
Step 5	**end** or **commit** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# commit`	Saves configuration changes. • When you use the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes: `Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:` • Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode. • Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes. • Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes. • Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Enabling and Configuring Continuity Check for a CFM Service

To configure Continuity Check for a CFM service, complete the following steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure`	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	**ethernet cfm** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ethernet cfm`	Enters Ethernet Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 3	**domain** *domain-name* **level** *level-value* [**id** [**null**] [**dns** *DNS-name*] [**mac** *H.H.H*] [**string** *string*]] **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm)# domain Domain_One level 1 id string D1`	Creates and names a container for all domain configurations and enters the CFM domain configuration mode. The level must be specified. The **id** is the maintenance domain identifier (MDID) and is used as the first part of the maintenance association identifier (MAID) in CFM frames. If the MDID is not specified, the domain name is used as the MDID by default.
Step 4	**service** *service-name* {**down-meps** | **xconnect group** *xconnect-group-name* **p2p** *xconnect-name*}[**id** [**icc-based** *icc-string umc-string*] | [[**number** *number*] **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn)# service ABC xconnect group X1 p2p ADB`	Configures and associates a service with the domain and enters CFM domain service configuration mode. You can specify that the service is used only for down MEPs, or associate the service with a bridge domain or xconnect where MIPs and up MEPs will be created. The **id** sets the short MA name.
Step 5	**continuity-check interval** *time* [**loss-threshold** *threshold*] **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# continuity-check interval 100m loss-threshold 10`	(Optional) Enables Continuity Check and specifies the time interval at which CCMs are transmitted or to set the threshold limit for when a MEP is declared down.
Step 6	**continuity-check archive hold-time** *minutes* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# continuity-check archive hold-time 100`	(Optional) Configures how long information about peer MEPs is stored after they have timed out.
Step 7	**continuity-check loss auto-traceroute** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# continuity-check loss auto-traceroute`	(Optional) Configures automatic triggering of a traceroute when a MEP is declared down.
Step 8	**end** or **commit** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# commit`	Saves configuration changes. • When you use the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes: `Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:`

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode. • Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes. • Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes. • Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Configuring Automatic MIP Creation for a CFM Service

For more information about the algorithm for creating MIPs, see the **MIP Creation** section.

To configure automatic MIP creation for a CFM service, complete the following steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure`	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	**ethernet cfm** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# ethernet cfm`	Enters the Ethernet Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) configuration mode.
Step 3	**domain** *domain-name* **level** *level-value* [**id** [**null**] [**dns** *DNS-name*] [**mac** *H.H.H*] [**string** *string*]] **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm)# domain Domain_One level 1 id string D1`	Creates and names a container for all domain configurations and enters the CFM domain configuration mode. The level must be specified. The only supported option is **id [null]** for less than 1min interval MEPS. The **id** is the maintenance domain identifier (MDID) and is used as the first part of the maintenance association identifier (MAID) in

	Command or Action	Purpose
		CFM frames. If the MDID is not specified, the domain name is used as the MDID by default.
Step 4	**service** *service-name* {**down-meps** | **xconnect group** *xconnect-group-name* **p2p** *xconnect-name*}[**id** [**icc-based***icc-string umc-string*] | [**number** *number*] **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn)# service ABC xconnect group X1 p2p ADB`	Configures and associates a service with the domain and enters CFM domain service configuration mode. You can specify that the service is used only for down MEPs, or associate the service with a bridge domain where MIPs and up MEPs will be created. The **id** sets the short MA name.
Step 5	**mip auto-create** {**all** | **lower-mep-only**} {**ccm-learning**} **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# mip auto-create all ccm-learning`	(Optional) Enables the automatic creation of MIPs in a bridge domain. **ccm-learning** option enables CCM learning for MIPs created in this service. This must be used only in services with a relatively long CCM interval of at least 100 ms. CCM learning at MIPs is disabled by default.
Step 6	**end** or **commit** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# commit`	Saves configuration changes. • When you use the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes: `Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:` • Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode. • Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes. • Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes. • Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Configuring Cross-Check on a MEP for a CFM Service

To configure cross-check on a MEP for a CFM service and specify the expected set of MEPs, complete the following steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure`	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	**ethernet cfm** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# ethernet cfm`	Enters the Ethernet Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) configuration mode.
Step 3	**domain** *domain-name* **level** *level-value* [**id** [**null**] [**dns** *DNS-name*] [**mac** *H.H.H*] [**string** *string*]] **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm)# domain Domain_One level 1 id string D1`	Creates and names a container for all domain configurations and enters the CFM domain configuration mode. The level must be specified. The **id** is the maintenance domain identifier (MDID) and is used as the first part of the maintenance association identifier (MAID) in CFM frames. If the MDID is not specified, the domain name is used as the MDID by default.
Step 4	**service** *service-name* {**bridge group** *bridge-domain-group* **bridge-domain** *bridge-domain-name* | **down-meps** | **xconnect group** *xconnect-group-name* **p2p** *xconnect-name*}[**id** [**icc-based** *icc-string umc-string*] | [**string** *text*] | [**number** *number*] | [**vlan-id** *id-number*] | [**vpn-id** *oui-vpnid*]] **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn)# service Bridge_Service bridge group BD1 bridge-domain B1`	Configures and associates a service with the domain and enters CFM domain service configuration mode. You can specify that the service is used only for down MEPs, or associate the service with a bridge domain or xconnect where MIPs and up MEPs will be created. The **id** sets the short MA name.
Step 5	**mep crosscheck** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-xcheck)# mep crosscheck mep-id 10`	Enters CFM MEP crosscheck configuration mode.
Step 6	**mep-id** *mep-id-number* [**mac-address** *mac-address*]	Enables cross-check on a MEP. **Note**

	Command or Action	Purpose
	Example: `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-xcheck)# mep-id 10`	• Repeat this command for every MEP that you want included in the expected set of MEPs for cross-check.
Step 7	**end** or **commit** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-xcheck)# commit`	Saves configuration changes. • When you use the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes: `Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:` • Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode. • Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes. • Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes. • Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Configuring Other Options for a CFM Service

To configure other options for a CFM service, complete the following steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure`	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	**ethernet cfm** **Example:**	Enters the Ethernet Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# ethernet cfm`	
Step 3	**domain** *domain-name* **level** *level-value* [**id** [**null**] [**dns** *DNS-name*] [**mac** *H.H.H*] [**string** *string*]] **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm)# domain Domain_One level 1 id string D1`	Creates and names a container for all domain configurations and enters the CFM domain configuration mode. The level must be specified. The **id** is the maintenance domain identifier (MDID) and is used as the first part of the maintenance association identifier (MAID) in CFM frames. If the MDID is not specified, the domain name is used as the MDID by default.
Step 4	**service** *service-name* {**bridge group** *bridge-domain-group* **bridge-domain** *bridge-domain-name* | **down-meps | xconnect group** *xconnect-group-name* **p2p** *xconnect-name*}[**id** [**icc-based** *icc-string umc-string*] | [**string** *text*] | [**number** *number*] | [**vlan-id** *id-number*] | [**vpn-id** *oui-vpnid*]] **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn)# service Bridge_Service bridge group BD1 bridge-domain B1`	Configures and associates a service with the domain and enters CFM domain service configuration mode. You can specify that the service is used only for down MEPs, or associate the service with a bridge domain or xconnect where MIPs and up MEPs will be created. The **id** sets the short MA name.
Step 5	**maximum-meps** *number* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# maximum-meps 1000`	(Optional) Configures the maximum number (2 to 8190) of MEPs across the network, which limits the number of peer MEPs recorded in the database.
Step 6	**log** {**ais**|**continuity-check errors**|**continuity-check mep changes**|**crosscheck errors**|**efd**} **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# log continuity-check errors`	(Optional) Enables logging of certain types of events.
Step 7	**end** or **commit** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# commit`	Saves configuration changes. • When you use the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes: `Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:` • Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the

	Command or Action	Purpose
		configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode. • Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes. • Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes. • Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Configuring CFM MEPs

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure`	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	**interface** {**HundredGigE** | **TenGigE**} *interface-path-id* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface TenGigE 0/0/0/1`	Type of Ethernet interface on which you want to create a MEP. Enter **HundredGigE** or **TenGigE** and the physical interface or virtual interface. **Note** • Use the **show interfaces** command to see a list of all interfaces currently configured on the router.
Step 3	**interface** {**HundredGigE** | **TenGigE** | **Bundle-Ether**} *interface-path-id.subinterface* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface TenGigE 0/0/0/1.1`	Type of Ethernet interface on which you want to create a MEP. Enter **HundredGigE, TenGigE,** or **Bundle-Ether** and the physical interface or virtual interface followed by the subinterface path ID. Naming convention is *interface-path-id.subinterface*. The period in front of the subinterface value is required as part of the notation.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	**interface** {**HundredGigE** | **TenGigE**} *interface-path-id* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface TenGigE 0/0/0/1`	Type of Ethernet interface on which you want to create a MEP. Enter **HundredGigE** or **TenGigE** and the physical interface or virtual interface. **Note** • Use the **show interfaces** command to see a list of all interfaces currently configured on the router.
Step 5	**ethernet cfm** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ethernet cfm`	Enters interface Ethernet CFM configuration mode.
Step 6	**mep domain** *domain-name* **service** *service-name* **mep-id** *id-number* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if-cfm)# mep domain Dm1 service Sv1 mep-id 1`	Creates a maintenance end point (MEP) on an interface and enters interface CFM MEP configuration mode.
Step 7	**cos** *cos* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if-cfm-mep)# cos 7`	(Optional) Configures the class of service (CoS) (from 0 to 7) for all CFM packets generated by the MEP on an interface. If not configured, the CoS is inherited from the Ethernet interface. **Note** For Ethernet interfaces, the CoS is carried as a field in the VLAN tag. Therefore, CoS only applies to interfaces where packets are sent with VLAN tags. If the **cos (CFM)** command is executed for a MEP on an interface that does not have a VLAN encapsulation configured, it will be ignored.
Step 8	**end** or **commit** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if-cfm-mep)# commit`	Saves configuration changes. • When you use the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes: `Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:` • Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes. • Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes. • Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Configuring Y.1731 AIS

This section has the following step procedures:

Configuring AIS in a CFM Domain Service

Use the following procedure to configure Alarm Indication Signal (AIS) transmission for a CFM domain service and configure AIS logging.

The following example shows how to configure AIS on a CFM interface:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure`	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	**ethernet cfm** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ethernet cfm`	Enters Ethernet CFM global configuration mode.
Step 3	**domain** *name* **level** *level* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm)# domain D1 level 1`	Specifies the domain and domain level.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	**service** *name* **bridge group** *name* **bridge-domain** *name* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn)# service S1 bridge group BG1 bridge-domain BD2`	Specifies the service, bridge group, and bridge domain.
Step 5	**service** *name* **xconnect group** *xconnect-group-name* **p2p** *xconnect-name* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn)# service S1 xconnect group XG1 p2p X2`	Specifies the service and cross-connect group and name.
Step 6	**ais transmission** [**interval** {**1s**|**1m**}][**cos** *cos*] **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# ais transmission interval 1m cos 7`	Configures Alarm Indication Signal (AIS) transmission for a Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) domain service.
Step 7	**log ais** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# log ais`	Configures AIS logging for a Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) domain service to indicate when AIS or LCK packets are received.
Step 8	**no domain** *name***level** *level* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# no domain D1 level 1`	Disables the domain and domain level.
Step 9	**end** or **commit** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sla-prof-stat-cfg)# commit`	Saves configuration changes. • When you issue the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes: `Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:` • Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode. • Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes. • Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Configuring AIS on a CFM Interface

To configure AIS on a CFM interface, perform the following steps:

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure`	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	**interface gigabitethernet** *interface-path-id* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# interface TenGigE 0/0/0/2`	Enters interface configuration mode.
Step 3	**ethernet cfm** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ethernet cfm`	Enters Ethernet CFM interface configuration mode.
Step 4	**ais transmission up interval 1m cos** *cos* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if-cfm)# ais transmission up interval 1m cos 7`	Configures Alarm Indication Signal (AIS) transmission on a Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) interface.
Step 5	**end** or **commit** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-sla-prof-stat-cfg)# commit`	Saves configuration changes. • When you issue the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes: `Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:`

	Command or Action	Purpose
		• Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode. • Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes. • Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes. • Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Configuring EFD for a CFM Service

To configure EFD for a CFM service, complete the following steps.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure`	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	**ethernet cfm** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ethernet cfm`	Enters CFM configuration mode.
Step 3	**domain** *domain-name* **level** *level-value* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn)# domain D1 level 1`	Specifies or creates the CFM domain and enters CFM domain configuration mode.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	**service** *service-name* **down-meps** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn)# service S1 down-meps`	Specifies or creates the CFM service for down MEPS and enters CFM domain service configuration mode.
Step 5	**efd** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# efd`	Enables EFD on all down MEPs in the down MEPS service.
Step 6	**log efd** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# log efd`	(Optional) Enables logging of EFD state changes on an interface.
Step 7	**end** or **commit** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# commit`	Saves configuration changes. • When you issue the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes: `Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:` • Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode. • Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes. • Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes. • Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Verifying the EFD Configuration

This example shows how to display all interfaces that are shut down because of Ethernet Fault Detection (EFD):

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show efd interfaces

Server VLAN MA
==============
Interface         Clients
------------------------
TenGigE0/0/0/0.0     CFM
```

Configuring Flexible VLAN Tagging for CFM

Use this procedure to set the number of tags in CFM packets in a CFM domain service.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure`	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	**ethernet cfm** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ethernet cfm`	Enters Ethernet CFM global configuration mode.
Step 3	**domain** *name* **level** *level* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm)# domain D1 level 1`	Specifies the domain and domain level.
Step 4	**service** *name* **bridge group** *name* **bridge-domain** *name* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn)# service S2 bridge group BG1 bridge-domain BD2`	Specifies the service, bridge group, and bridge domain.
Step 5	**tags** *number* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# tags 1`	Specifies the number of tags in CFM packets. Currently, the only valid value is 1.
Step 6	**end** or **commit** **Example:**	Saves configuration changes. • When you issue the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes:

	Command or Action	Purpose
	`RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# commit`	`Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)? [cancel]:` • Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode. • Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes. • Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes. • Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Verifying the CFM Configuration

To verify the CFM configuration, use one or more of the following commands:

show ethernet cfm configuration-errors [**domain** *domain-name*] [**interface** *interface-path-id*]	Displays information about errors that are preventing configured CFM operations from becoming active, as well as any warnings that have occurred.
show ethernet cfm local maintenance-points domain *name* [**service** *name]* | **interface** *type interface-path-id*] [**mep** | **mip**]	Displays a list of local maintenance points.

Note After you configure CFM, the error message, *cfmd[317]: %L2-CFM-5-CCM_ERROR_CCMS_MISSED : Some received CCMs have not been counted by the CCM error counters*, may display. This error message does not have any functional impact and does not require any action from you.

Configuration Examples for Ethernet CFM

This section includes the following examples:

Ethernet CFM Domain Configuration: Example

This example shows how to configure a basic domain for Ethernet CFM:

```
configure
 ethernet cfm
  traceroute cache hold-time 1 size 3000
  domain Domain_One level 1 id string D1
  commit
```

Ethernet CFM Service Configuration: Example

This example shows how to create a service for an Ethernet CFM domain:

```
  service Bridge_Service bridge group BD1 bridge-domain B1
  service Cross_Connect_1 xconnect group XG1 p2p X1
  commit
```

Flexible Tagging for an Ethernet CFM Service Configuration: Example

This example shows how to set the number of tags in CFM packets from down MEPs in a CFM domain service:

```
configure
 ethernet cfm
  domain D1 level 1
   service S2 bridge group BG1 bridge-domain BD2
    tags 1
    commit
```

Continuity Check for an Ethernet CFM Service Configuration: Example

This example shows how to configure continuity-check options for an Ethernet CFM service:

```
   continuity-check archive hold-time 100
   continuity-check loss auto-traceroute
   continuity-check interval 100ms loss-threshold 10
   commit
```

MIP Creation for an Ethernet CFM Service Configuration: Example

This example shows how to enable MIP auto-creation for an Ethernet CFM service:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# mip auto-create all
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# commit
```

Cross-check for an Ethernet CFM Service Configuration: Example

This example shows how to configure cross-check for MEPs in an Ethernet CFM service:

```
   mep crosscheck
    mep-id 10
    mep-id 20
    commit
```

Other Ethernet CFM Service Parameter Configuration: Example

This example shows how to configure other Ethernet CFM service options:

```
   maximum-meps 4000
   log continuity-check errors
   commit
   exit
  exit
 exit
```

MEP Configuration: Example

This example shows how to configure a MEP for Ethernet CFM on an interface:

```
interface TenGigE 0/0/0/1
 ethernet cfm
 mep domain Dm1 service Sv1 mep-id 1
 commit
```

Ethernet CFM Show Command: Examples

These examples show how to verify the configuration of Ethernet Connectivity Fault Management (CFM):

Example 1

This example shows how to display all the maintenance points that have been created on an interface:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ethernet cfm local maintenance-points

Domain/Level         Service             Interface         Type   ID   MAC
-------------------- ------------------- ----------------- ------ ---- --------
fig/5                bay                 Gi0/10/0/12       Dn MEP    2 44:55:66
fig/5                bay                 Gi0/0/1/0         MIP         55:66:77
fred/3               barney              Gi0/1/0/0         Dn MEP    5 66:77:88!
```

Example 2

This example shows how to display all the CFM configuration errors on all domains:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ethernet cfm configuration-errors

Domain fig (level 5), Service bay
* MIP creation configured using bridge-domain blort, but bridge-domain blort does not exist.

 * An Up MEP is configured for this domain on interface TenGigE0/0/0/3 and an Up MEP is
also configured for domain blort, which is at the same level (5).
 * A MEP is configured on interface TenGigE0/0/0/1 for this domain/service, which has CC
interval 100ms, but the lowest interval supported on that interface is 1s
```

Example 3

This example shows how to display operational state for local maintenance end points (MEPs):

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ethernet cfm local meps

 A - AIS received                I - Wrong interval
 R - Remote Defect received      V - Wrong Level
 L - Loop (our MAC received)     T - Timed out (archived)
 C - Config (our ID received)    M - Missing (cross-check)
 X - Cross-connect (wrong MAID)  U - Unexpected (cross-check)
```

```
 P - Peer port down

Domain foo (level 6), Service bar
   ID Interface (State)        Dir MEPs/Err RD Defects AIS
----- ------------------------ --- -------- -- ------- ---
  100 Gi1/1/0/1 (Up)       Up     0/0   N  A       L7

Domain fred (level 5), Service barney
   ID Interface (State)        Dir MEPs/Err RD Defects AIS
----- ------------------------ --- -------- -- ------- ---
    2 Gi0/1/0/0 (Up)       Up     3/2   Y  RPC     L6
Domain foo (level 6), Service bar
   ID Interface (State)        Dir MEPs/Err RD Defects AIS
----- ------------------------ --- -------- -- ------- ---
  100 Gi1/1/0/1 (Up)       Up     0/0   N  A

Domain fred (level 5), Service barney
   ID Interface (State)        Dir MEPs/Err RD Defects AIS
----- ------------------------ --- -------- -- ------- ---
    2 Gi0/1/0/0 (Up)       Up     3/2   Y  RPC
```

Example 4

This example shows how to display operational state of other maintenance end points (MEPs) detected by a local MEP:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ethernet cfm peer meps

Flags:
 > - Ok                          I - Wrong interval
 R - Remote Defect received      V - Wrong level
 L - Loop (our MAC received)     T - Timed out
 C - Config (our ID received)    M - Missing (cross-check)
 X - Cross-connect (wrong MAID)  U - Unexpected (cross-check)

Domain fred (level 7), Service barney
Down MEP on TenGigE0/0/0/1, MEP-ID 2
================================================================================
St    ID MAC address    Port    Up/Downtime   CcmRcvd SeqErr   RDI Error
-- ----- -------------- ------- ----------- --------- ------ ----- -----
 >     1 0011.2233.4455 Up      00:00:01         1234      0     0     0
R>     4 4455.6677.8899 Up      1d 03:04         3456      0   234     0
L      2 1122.3344.5566 Up      3w 1d 6h         3254      0     0  3254
C      2 7788.9900.1122 Test    00:13            2345      6    20  2345
X      3 2233.4455.6677 Up      00:23              30      0     0    30
I      3 3344.5566.7788 Down    00:34           12345      0   300  1234
V      3 8899.0011.2233 Blocked 00:35              45      0     0    45
 T     5 5566.7788.9900         00:56              20      0     0     0
M      6                                           0      0     0     0
U>     7 6677.8899.0011 Up      00:02             456      0     0     0

Domain fred (level 7), Service fig
Down MEP on TenGigE0/0/0/12, MEP-ID 3
================================================================================
St    ID MAC address    Port    Up/Downtime  CcmRcvd SeqErr   RDI Error
-- ----- -------------- ------- ----------- -------- ------ ----- -----
 >     1 9900.1122.3344 Up      03:45           4321      0     0     0
```

Example 5

This example shows how to display operational state of other maintenance end points (MEPs) detected by a local MEP with details:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#  show ethernet cfm peer meps detail
Domain dom3 (level 5), Service ser3
Down MEP on TenGigE0/0/0/1 MEP-ID 1
================================================================================
Peer MEP-ID 10, MAC 0001.0203.0403
   CFM state: Wrong level, for 00:01:34
   Port state: Up
   CCM defects detected:    V - Wrong Level
   CCMs received: 5
     Out-of-sequence:             0
     Remote Defect received:      5
     Wrong Level:                 0
     Cross-connect (wrong MAID):  0
     Wrong Interval:              5
     Loop (our MAC received):     0
     Config (our ID received):    0
Last CCM received 00:00:06 ago:
     Level: 4, Version: 0, Interval: 1min
     Sequence number: 5, MEP-ID: 10
     MAID: String: dom3, String: ser3
     Port status: Up, Interface status: Up


Domain dom4 (level 2), Service ser4
Down MEP on TenGigE0/0/0/2 MEP-ID 1
================================================================================
Peer MEP-ID 20, MAC 0001.0203.0402
   CFM state: Ok, for 00:00:04
   Port state: Up
   CCMs received: 7
     Out-of-sequence:             1
     Remote Defect received:      0
     Wrong Level:                 0
     Cross-connect (wrong MAID):  0
     Wrong Interval:              0
     Loop (our MAC received):     0
  Config (our ID received):    0
Last CCM received 00:00:04 ago:
     Level: 2, Version: 0, Interval: 10s
     Sequence number: 1, MEP-ID: 20
     MAID: String: dom4, String: ser4
     Chassis ID: Local: ios; Management address: 'Not specified'
     Port status: Up, Interface status: Up

Peer MEP-ID 21, MAC 0001.0203.0403
   CFM state: Ok, for 00:00:05
   Port state: Up
   CCMs received: 6
     Out-of-sequence:             0
     Remote Defect received:      0
     Wrong Level:                 0
     Cross-connect (wrong MAID):  0
     Wrong Interval:              0
     Loop (our MAC received):     0
     Config (our ID received):    0
Last CCM received 00:00:05 ago:
     Level: 2, Version: 0, Interval: 10s
     Sequence number: 1, MEP-ID: 21
     MAID: String: dom4, String: ser4
     Port status: Up, Interface status: Up


Peer MEP-ID 601, MAC 0001.0203.0402
```

```
CFM state: Timed Out (Standby), for 00:15:14, RDI received
Port state: Down
CCM defects detected:    Defects below ignored on local standby MEP
                         I - Wrong Interval
                         R - Remote Defect received
                         T - Timed Out
                         P - Peer port down
CCMs received: 2
  Out-of-sequence:             0
  Remote Defect received:      2
  Wrong Level:                 0

  Wrong Interval:              2
  Loop (our MAC received):     0
  Config (our ID received):    0
Last CCM received 00:15:49 ago:
  Level: 2, Version: 0, Interval: 10s
  Sequence number: 1, MEP-ID: 600
  MAID: DNS-like: dom5, String: ser5
  Chassis ID: Local: ios; Management address: 'Not specified'
  Port status: Up, Interface status: Down
```

AIS for CFM Configuration: Examples

Example 1

This example shows how to configure Alarm Indication Signal (AIS) transmission for a CFM domain service:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ethernet cfm
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm)# domain D1 level 1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn)# service S1 bridge group BG1 bridge-domain BD2
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# ais transmission interval 1m cos 7

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:routerconfigure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ethernet cfm
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm)# domain D1 level 1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn)# service Cross_Connect_1 xconnect group XG1 p2p X1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# ais transmission interval 1m cos 7
```

Example 2

This example shows how to configure AIS logging for a Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) domain service to indicate when AIS or LCK packets are received:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ethernet cfm
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm)# domain D1 level 1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn)# service S2 bridge group BG1 bridge-domain BD2
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# log ais

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:routerconfigure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ethernet cfm
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm)# domain D1 level 1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn)# service Cross_Connect_1 xconnect group XG1 p2p X1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm-dmn-svc)# log ais
```

This example shows how to configure AIS transmission on a CFM interface.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface TenGigE 0/0/0/2
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ethernet cfm
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if-cfm)# ais transmission up interval 1m cos 7
```

AIS for CFM Show Commands: Examples

This section includes the following examples:

show ethernet cfm interfaces ais Command: Example

This example shows how to display the information published in the Interface AIS table:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ethernet cfm interfaces ais

Defects (from at least one peer MEP):
 A - AIS received                I - Wrong interval
 R - Remote Defect received      V - Wrong Level
 L - Loop (our MAC received)     T - Timed out (archived)
 C - Config (our ID received)    M - Missing (cross-check)
 X - Cross-connect (wrong MAID)  U - Unexpected (cross-check)
 P - Peer port down              D - Local port down

                            Trigger                  Transmission
                       AIS  ---------    Via    ----------------------------
Interface (State)      Dir  L Defects  Levels   L Int Last started  Packets
---------------------- ---  - -------  -------  - --- ------------ ---------
TenGigE0/0/0/0 (Up)     Dn   5 RPC      6        7 1s  01:32:56 ago     5576
TenGigE0/0/0/0 (Up)     Up   0 M        2,3      5 1s  00:16:23 ago      983
TenGigE0/0/0/1 (Dn)     Up     D                7 60s 01:02:44 ago     3764
TenGigE0/0/0/2 (Up)     Dn   0 RX       1!
```

show ethernet cfm local meps Command: Examples

Example 1: Default

This example shows how to display statistics for local maintenance end points (MEPs):

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ethernet cfm local meps

 A - AIS received                I - Wrong interval
 R - Remote Defect received      V - Wrong Level
 L - Loop (our MAC received)     T - Timed out (archived)
 C - Config (our ID received)    M - Missing (cross-check)
 X - Cross-connect (wrong MAID)  U - Unexpected (cross-check)
 P - Peer port down

Domain foo (level 6), Service bar
   ID Interface (State)        Dir MEPs/Err RD Defects AIS
----- ------------------------ --- -------- -- ------- ---
  100 Gi1/1/0/1 (Up)       Up     0/0   N  A       7

Domain fred (level 5), Service barney
   ID Interface (State)        Dir MEPs/Err RD Defects AIS
----- ------------------------ --- -------- -- ------- ---
    2 Gi0/1/0/0 (Up)       Up     3/2   Y  RPC     6
```

Example 2: Domain Service

This example shows how to display statistics for MEPs in a domain service:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ethernet cfm local meps domain foo service bar detail

Domain foo (level 6), Service bar
Down MEP on TenGigE0/0/0/1, MEP-ID 100
================================================================================
  Interface state: Up      MAC address: 1122.3344.5566
  Peer MEPs: 0 up, 0 with errors, 0 timed out (archived)

  CCM generation enabled:  No
  AIS generation enabled:  Yes (level: 7, interval: 1s)
  Sending AIS:             Yes (started 01:32:56 ago)
  Receiving AIS:           Yes (from lower MEP, started 01:32:56 ago)

Domain fred (level 5), Service barney
Down MEP on TenGigE0/0/0/1, MEP-ID 2
================================================================================
  Interface state: Up      MAC address: 1122.3344.5566
  Peer MEPs: 3 up, 2 with errors, 0 timed out (archived)
  Cross-check defects: 0 missing, 0 unexpected

  CCM generation enabled:  Yes (Remote Defect detected: Yes)
  CCM defects detected:    R - Remote Defect received
                           P - Peer port down
                           C - Config (our ID received)
  AIS generation enabled:  Yes (level: 6, interval: 1s)
  Sending AIS:             Yes (to higher MEP, started 01:32:56 ago)
  Receiving AIS:           No
```

Example 4: Detail

This example shows how to display detailed statistics for MEPs in a domain service:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ethernet cfm local meps detail

Domain foo (level 6), Service bar
Down MEP on TenGigE0/0/0/1, MEP-ID 100
================================================================================
  Interface state: Up      MAC address: 1122.3344.5566
  Peer MEPs: 0 up, 0 with errors, 0 timed out (archived)

  CCM generation enabled:  No
  AIS generation enabled:  Yes (level: 7, interval: 1s)
  Sending AIS:             Yes (started 01:32:56 ago)
  Receiving AIS:           Yes (from lower MEP, started 01:32:56 ago)

Domain fred (level 5), Service barney
Down MEP on TenGigE0/0/0/1, MEP-ID 2
================================================================================
  Interface state: Up      MAC address: 1122.3344.5566
  Peer MEPs: 3 up, 2 with errors, 0 timed out (archived)
  Cross-check defects: 0 missing, 0 unexpected

  CCM generation enabled:  Yes (Remote Defect detected: Yes)
  CCM defects detected:    R - Remote Defect received
                           P - Peer port down
                           C - Config (our ID received)
  AIS generation enabled:  Yes (level: 6, interval: 1s)
```

```
  Sending AIS:             Yes (to higher MEP, started 01:32:56 ago)
  Receiving AIS:           No
```

show ethernet cfm local meps detail Command: Example

Use the **show ethernet cfm local meps detail** command to display MEP-related EFD status information. This example shows that EFD is triggered for MEP-ID 100:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ethernet cfm local meps detail

Domain foo (level 6), Service bar
Down MEP on TenGigE0/0/0/1, MEP-ID 100
==============================================================================
  Interface state: Up      MAC address: 1122.3344.5566
  Peer MEPs: 0 up, 0 with errors, 0 timed out (archived)
  Cross-check errors: 2 missing, 0 unexpected

  CCM generation enabled:  No
  AIS generation enabled:  Yes (level: 7, interval: 1s)
  Sending AIS:             Yes (started 01:32:56 ago)
  Receiving AIS:           Yes (from lower MEP, started 01:32:56 ago)
  EFD triggered:           Yes

Domain fred (level 5), Service barney
Down MEP on TenGigE0/0/0/1, MEP-ID 2
==============================================================================
  Interface state: Up      MAC address: 1122.3344.5566
  Peer MEPs: 3 up, 0 with errors, 0 timed out (archived)
  Cross-check errors: 0 missing, 0 unexpected

  CCM generation enabled:  Yes (Remote Defect detected: No)
  AIS generation enabled:  Yes (level: 6, interval: 1s)
  Sending AIS:             No
  Receiving AIS:           No
  EFD triggered:           No
```

Note You can also verify that EFD has been triggered on an interface using the **show interfaces** and **show interfaces brief** commands. When an EFD trigger has occurred, these commands will show the interface status as *up* and the line protocol state as *down*.

Troubleshooting Tips

To troubleshoot problems within the CFM network, perform these steps:

Procedure

Step 1 To verify connectivity to a problematic MEP, use the **ping ethernet cfm** command as shown in this example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# ping ethernet cfm domain D1 service S1 mep-id 16 source
interface TenGigE 0/0/0/1

Type escape sequence to abort.
```

```
Sending 5 CFM Loopbacks, timeout is 2 seconds -
Domain foo (level 2), Service foo
Source: MEP ID 1, interface TenGigE0/0/0/1
Target: 0001.0002.0003 (MEP ID 16):
  Running (5s) ...
Success rate is 60.0 percent (3/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 1251/1349/1402 ms
Out-of-sequence: 0.0 percent (0/3)
Bad data: 0.0 percent (0/3)
Received packet rate: 1.4 pps
```

Step 2 If the results of the **ping ethernet cfm** command show a problem with connectivity to the peer MEP, use the **traceroute ethernet cfm** command to help further isolate the location of the problem as shown in the following example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# traceroute ethernet cfm domain D1 service S1 mep-id 16
 source interface TenGigE 0/0/0/2

Traceroutes in domain D1 (level 4), service S1
Source: MEP-ID 1, interface TenGigE0/0/0/2
================================================================================
Traceroute at 2009-05-18 12:09:10 to 0001.0203.0402,
TTL 64, Trans ID 2:

Hop Hostname/Last            Ingress MAC/name       Egress MAC/Name        Relay
--- ---------------------- ---------------------- ---------------------- -----
  1 ios                      0001.0203.0400 [Down]                        FDB
      0000-0001.0203.0400    TenGigE0/0/0/2
  2 abc                                             0001.0203.0401 [Ok]    FDB
      ios                                           Not present
  3 bcd                      0001.0203.0402 [Ok]                          Hit
      abc                    TenGigE0/0
Replies dropped: 0
```

If the target was a MEP, verify that the last hop shows “Hit” in the Relay field to confirm connectivity to the peer MEP.

If the Relay field contains “MPDB” for any of the hops, then the target MAC address was not found in the bridge MAC learning table at that hop, and the result is relying on CCM learning. This result can occur under normal conditions, but it can also indicate a problem. If you used the **ping ethernet cfm** command before using the **traceroute ethernet cfm** command, then the MAC address should have been learned. If “MPDB” is appearing in that case, then this indicates a problem at that point in the network.

CFM Over Bundles

CFM over bundle supports the following:

- CFM Maintenance Points—Up Maintenance-association End Points (MEP), Down MEP, and MIP, which includes L2 bundle main and sub-interfaces.
- CCM interval of 100 microsecond, 1second, 10 seconds, and 1 minute. CCM interval of 10 minutes is supported only in the versions earlier than IOS XR 7.3.2.
- Process restart without impacting CFM sessions.

- CFM MEPs on bundle interfaces as software-offloaded-MEPs with all possible rewrite and encapsulation combinations supported by L2 sub-interfaces.
- CCM learning on MIP over bundle interfaces. CCM database learning supports investigation of one CCM out of 50 that goes over MIP.
- Static and dynamic Remote MEPs.

Restrictions for Configuration of CFM on Bundles

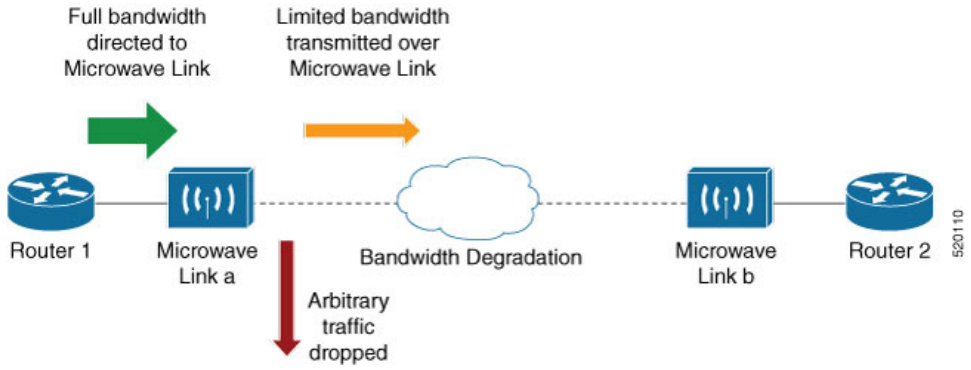
Following are the restrictions for configuring CFM:

- Only Layer 2 bundle Ethernet interfaces and sub-interfaces are supported except for those matching the VLAN tag `any`.
- CCM interval of 3.3 milliseconds and 10 milliseconds are not supported.
- CCM interval of 10 minutes is not supported from IOS XR 7.3.2.
- Supports 5000 pps rates of CCM traffic for bundle interfaces. For example, for CCM interval of 100 milliseconds, the number of MEPs can be 500.
- Ethernet CFM is not supported with MEP that are configured on default and untagged encapsulated sub-interfaces that are part of a single physical interface.
- CCM packets, being OAM data packets, cannot be prioritized over normal data traffic when using a policer; if traffic exceeds the configured rate, CCM packets might be dropped. To prevent interface flaps caused by CCM packet drops, configure a separate class map to prioritize CCM packets.

CFM Adaptive Bandwidth Notifications

Microwave links are used in carrier ethernet networks, because they are cheaper than laying fibre either in dense metro areas or rural locations. However, the disadvantage of microwave links is that the signal is affected by atmospheric conditions and can degrade.

Modern microwave devices support adaptive modulation schemes to prevent a complete loss of signal. This allows them to continue to operate during periods of degradation, but at a reduced bandwidth. However, to fully take advantage of this, it's necessary to convey the decrease in bandwidth to the head-end router so that appropriate actions can be taken. Otherwise, the link may become saturated and traffic dropped arbitrarily as shown in the following figure:



A generic solution to this is a Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) extension to send Bandwidth Notifications Messages (BNM) to Maintenance Endpoints (MEPs) on the corresponding interface on the head-end router. To be flexible in the actions taken, the choice of solution uses Embedded Event Manager (EEM) to invoke operator written TCL scripts. For information on EEM, see Embedded Event Manager, on page 92.

Bandwidth Notification Messages

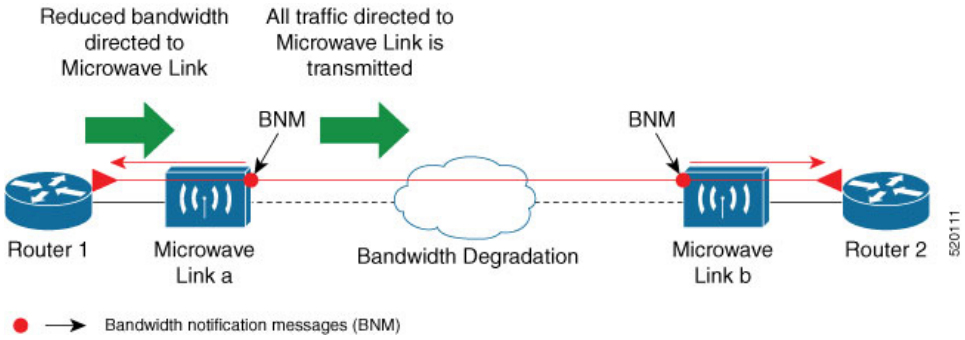
The two types of messages used to notify the head-end router are:

- G.8013 Bandwidth Notification Messages (G.8013 BNM)
- Cisco proprietary Bandwidth Vendor-Specific Messages (Cisco BW-VSM)

Both the message types contain the following information:

- Source MAC
- Port ID
- Maintenance Domain (MD) Level
- Transmission period
- Nominal Bandwidth
- Current Bandwidth

During signal degradation, periodic BNMs are sent to the head-end router containing the current bandwidth (sampled over a period of time) and nominal bandwidth (full bandwidth when there is no degradation). This allows the router to reduce the bandwidth directed to the link as shown in the figure below:



When degradation in bandwidth is detected, depending on the topology, the degradation may affect one or more paths in the network. Therefore, in more complex topologies, the head-end router may need information about links in each affected path. The BNM transmission period and a Link ID are used to differentiate between messages from the same source MAC address which refer to different links.

Restrictions for CFM Bandwidth Notifications

The list of restrictions for CFM Bandwidth Notifications is:

- Up to 200 unique BNM enabled links learnt from BNMs are supported per line card. Any BNMs for links over this limit will be discarded.

To reset CFM BNM enabled links for the specified interfaces, use the `clear ethernet cfm interface [ <interface> ] bandwidth-notifications { all | state <state> } [ location { all | <node> } ]` command. An archive timer is used to clean up any BNM enabled links whose loss timer expired at least 24 hours ago.

- Over process restart:
  - Loss threshold, wait-to-restore, and hold-off timers are restarted. This may cause links to take longer to transition between states than they would have otherwise.
  - Archive timers are restarted. This may cause historical statistics for links to persist longer than they would have otherwise.
  - Queued events for EEM scripts which have been rate-limited are not preserved. Scripts with at least one link in DEGRADED state, or BNMs have changed over process restart, and are invoked. Rate-limit timers are restarted. This may cause scripts to be invoked when they would otherwise have been filtered by the damping or conformance-testing algorithms. If the last link returns to its nominal bandwidth within the rate-limit period but before the process restart, then the script will not be invoked after the process restart. Thus, actions taken by the script may not reflect the (increased) latest bandwidths of any links which returned to their nominal bandwidths within the rate-limit period.

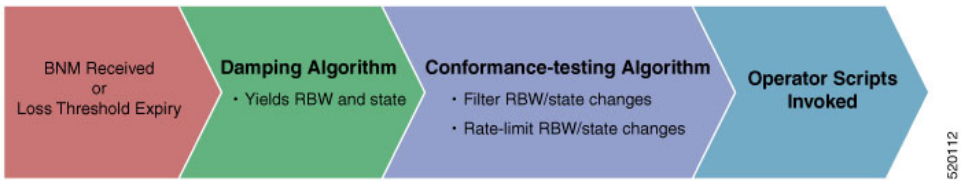
Bandwidth Reporting

Received BNMs are used to identify BNM enabled links within a Maintenance Entity Group (MEG), and should be uniquely identifiable within the MEG by Port-ID or MAC address. Each link has an associated nominal bandwidth, and a Reported Bandwidth (RBW), which are notified to the operator. The link is considered to be in OK state when the RBW is equal to the nominal bandwidth and DEGRADED if RBW is less than nominal.

Devices sending BNMs can detect changes in bandwidth many times a second. For example, changes caused by an object passing through a microwave link's line of sight. The protocol for sending BNMs is designed to mitigate fluctuating current bandwidth by sampling across a 'monitoring-interval' and applying basic damping to degradation events. To help mitigate this further, a damping algorithm is used. This algorithm is applied on the receiving device, and is distinct from any damping performed by the sender. For more information on this, see Damping Algorithm, on page 91.

An operator may be interested in more than one BNM enabled link, and needs the ability to register on a set of BNM enabled links which affect the path to a node in the network. To do this, the state and RBW for each link of interest are put into a conformance testing algorithm, which both filters and rate-limits changes to publish events notifying the operator only of significant changes. For more information on this, see Conformance Testing Algorithm, on page 92.

The following diagram shows how a received BNM flows through the damping and conformance testing algorithm to invoke operator scripts:



Note

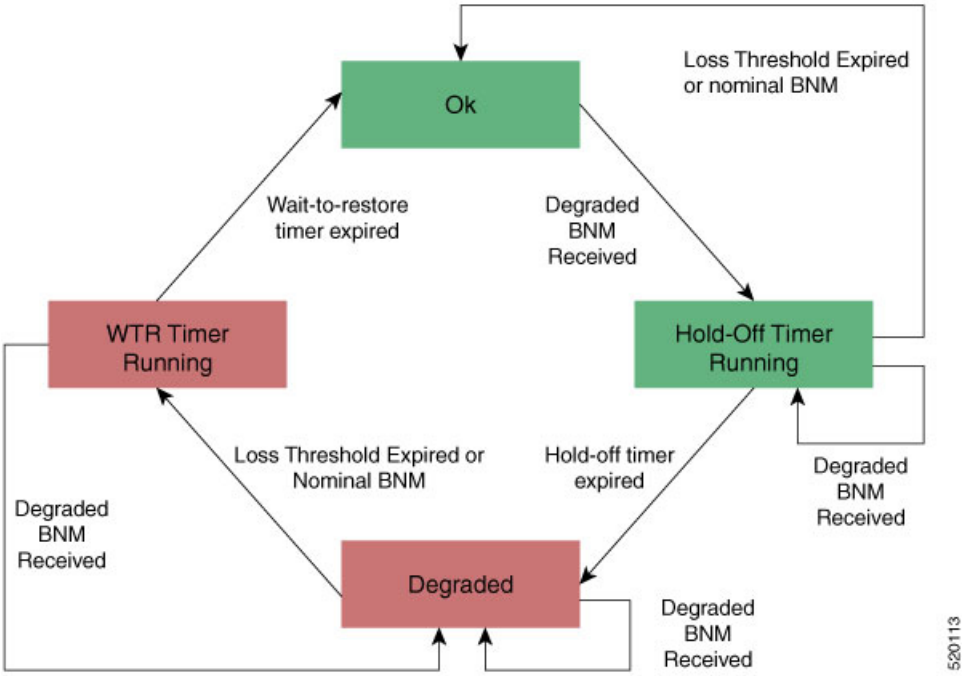
- Port ID takes precedence over MAC address. This means that BNMs with same port ID but different MAC addresses are counted as same BNMs.
- If BNM reported bandwidth is equal to the threshold, then EEM will not be invoked.
- If a degraded link having bandwidth higher than the threshold receives BNM with bandwidth less than the threshold, it doesn't wait for the hold-off timer and instantly changes the bandwidth by invoking EEM script.

Damping Algorithm

A damping algorithm is applied to each unique BNM enabled link for which BNMs are received. The table below describes the timers used for this purpose:

Timers	Description
loss threshold (in packet numbers)	This timer handles the case when BNMs stop being received. This timer is (re)started whenever any BNM is received for the link. The value is equal to the expected period between BNMs (as indicated by the last BNM) multiplied by the configured loss threshold. When the loss threshold timer expires, as the link may have changed or been removed entirely, bandwidth information is no longer available, therefore the link is considered to have been restored to its previously notified nominal bandwidth.
hold-off (in seconds)	This timer is used to damp transient transitions from OK to DEGRADED state. It is started when the first degraded BNM is received, and is stopped if the loss threshold timer expires or the current bandwidth returns to the nominal bandwidth. If the timer expires, then the BNM enabled link enters DEGRADED state. The value of this timer is configurable. If it is zero, then the link immediately enters degraded state and the timer is not started.
wait-to-restore (WTR, in seconds)	This timer is used to damp transient transitions from DEGRADED to OK state. It is started when a BNM Enabled Link is in DEGRADED state and either the loss threshold timer expires or a BNM is received that indicates the current bandwidth has returned to the nominal bandwidth. If a degraded BNM is received while the timer is running then it is stopped and the BNM Enabled Link remains in DEGRADED state. If this timer expires then the link returns to OK state.

The following internal state transition diagram shows how damping algorithm takes place:



Conformance Testing Algorithm

The conformance testing algorithm comprises of two parts:

1. Filtering bandwidth changes.

   Filtering is done so that events are published whenever either:

   - Any link which was in OK state or had a RBW more than or equal to the specified threshold, has transitioned to DEGRADED state and has a RBW less than the specified threshold.
   - Any link which was in DEGRADED state and had a RBW less than the specified threshold, is still in DEGRADED state and has a RBW less than the specified threshold, but the old and new RBWs are different.
   - Any link which was in DEGRADED state and had a RBW less than the specified threshold, has transitioned to OK state or has a RBW more than or equal to the specified threshold.

2. Rate-limiting bandwidth changes

   Rate-limiting is done by only publishing events at most once within any rate-limit period. If there is a change in bandwidth (which passes the filter) within this rate-limit period, a timer is started to expire at the end of the period. Upon timer expiry, an event is published which reflects the latest state and bandwidth of all links of interest which are in DEGRADED state.

Embedded Event Manager

The Embedded Event Manager (EEM) consists of an EEM server that monitors various real-time events in the system using programs called Event Detectors (EDs) and triggers registered policies (for example, TCLscripts) to run. The EEM supports at least 200 script registrations.

Typical actions taken in response to signal degradation events include:

- Signaling to G.8032 to switch some flows to alternative paths
- Modifying QoS configuration to adjust traffic shaping to the new bandwidth
- Adjusting IGP metrics to switch some traffic to an alternative path

The following variables can be queried within the TCL script:

EEM Variables	Comment
`interface, level, direction`	Identify the MEP in the registration
`min_reported_bandwidth`	Minimum reported bandwidth across all links in the registration that are currently in DEGRADED state, and below the specified threshold
`bnm_enabled_links [{ MAC address | Port ID }]`	Array of BNM enabled links, with each one containing the following elements: • `reported_bw`: Reported Bandwidth • `nominal_bw`: Nominal BW in last BNM
`event_type`	Either 'DEGRADED' or 'OK' DEGRADED indicates that at least one BNM enabled link in the registration is in DEGRADED state with a reported bandwidth less than the threshold. This means that the `event_type` could be 'OK' if all BNM enabled links in the registration which are in DEGRADED state have a reported bandwidth greater than or equal to the threshold.

The command for EEM TCL scripts registering for CFM Bandwidth Notification events is `interface <interface name> level <level> direction <direction> {mac-addresses { <addr1> [, …, <addr20>] } | port-ids { <id1> [, …, <id20>] } threshold <bandwidth> [ ratelimit <time> ].`

To configure EEM, use the following commands:

```
event manager directory user policy disk0:/
event manager directory user library disk0:/
event manager policy EEMscript7.tcl username root persist-time 3600
aaa authorization eventmanager default local
```

Individual scripts located in the specified directory can then be configured with:

```
event manager policy <script_name> username lab persist-time <time>
```

Event Publishing

CFM publishes events for a given EEM registration after applying the damping and conformance testing algorithms as described in Damping Algorithm, on page 91 and Conformance Testing Algorithm, on page 92 respectively. The set of BNM Enabled Links published in an event are those in DEGRADED state and whose RBW is less than the specified threshold.

CFM with SAT and EDPL

CFM can run along with SAT (Service Activation Test) session on the same interface. Both works independent of each other.

However, other OAM sessions like SLM and DMM will go down during the SAT session. They get restored once the SAT session is completed. This is expected as per requirements.

Limitations and Restrictions

- SAT session works similar to MD-level 7 session. So, CFM sessions, on same interface, will have to be at levels lower than 7, i.e 0 to 6.

Example:

The below setup is an example:

```
Interface 1           ---------------------        Interface 2
         CFM (MDL 0 to 6)      ---------------------        CFM (MDL 0 to 6)
         DMM/SLM               ----------------             DMM/SLM
         SAT                   --------------               EDPL (with DestMac)
```

Note

- DMM/SLM goes down when SAT is active. They get restored once SAT session is completed.
- Ethernet Data Plane Loopback functionality (EDPL) does not support multicast destination MAC address packets for NCS 5700 line cards. So, it is recommended to use EDPL on peer node with filter - Destination_MAC (same as the destination of the SAT session).
- CCM have multicast destination MAC(0180.c200.003x).

Y.1731 Performance Monitoring

Y.1731 Performance Monitoring (PM) provides a standard Ethernet PM function that includes measurement of Ethernet frame delay, frame delay variation, frame loss, and frame throughput measurements. This is specified by the ITU-T Y-1731 standard and interpreted by the Metro Ethernet Forum (MEF) standards group.

The router supports the following:

- Delay Measurement (DM)
- Synthetic Loss Measurement (SLM)

Starting with release Cisco IOS XR Release 7.3.1, Y.1731 Performance Monitoring is supported on the following Cisco NCS 540 variants:

- N540X-6Z18G-SYS-A
- N540X-6Z18G-SYS-D
- N540X-8Z16G-SYS-A
- N540X-8Z16G-SYS-D

Restrictions for Y.1731 Performance Monitoring

Y.1731 Performance Monitoring is not supported for the following:

- Segment Routing over IPv6 (SRv6) based transport
- GRE tunnel based transport

One-Way Delay Measurement

One-Way Delay measurement (DMM) is the time that is taken from the source to destination and vice versa. The clocks between the two MEPs must be synchronized for one-way frame delay measurement. The synchronization of the clock is achieved by the PTP protocol.

Configuring One-Way Delay Measurement

Perform the following steps to configure one-way delay measurement:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router (config)# ethernet cfm
domain dmn1 level 1 id null
service srv1 down-meps id number 1
continuity-check interval 1s
mep crosscheck
mep-id 2
!
!
!
!
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router (config)# interface TenGigE0/0/0/10.1 l2transport
encapsulation dot1q 1
ethernet cfm
mep domain dmn1 service srv1 mep-id 1

!
```

Two-Way Delay Measurement for Scalability

Use the Ethernet frame delay measurement to measure frame delay and frame delay variations. The system measures the Ethernet frame delay by using the Delay Measurement Message (DMM) method.

Table 3: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release	Description
Two-Way Delay Measurement for increased scale	Release 7.5.1	This release enhances the two-way delay measurement feature from 100 to 1500 pps of Delay Measurement Message (DMM) sessions and 1500 pps of Synthetic Loss Measurement (SLM) sessions. Such enhanced measurement helps you monitor more services on your network. It also helps you monitor SLAs more effectively.

Starting with Cisco IOS XR 7.5.1 release, the two-way delay measurement feature value is enhanced from 100 to 1500 pps of DMM sessions on N540-28Z4C-SYS-A/D, N540X-16Z4G8Q2C-A/D, N540-12Z20G-SYS-A/D, N540X-12Z16G-SYS-A/D, N540X-6Z18G-SYS-A/D, and N540X-8Z16G-SYS-A/D variants.

Restrictions for Configuring Two-Way Delay Measurement

Follow the guidelines and restrictions listed here when you configure two-way delay measurement:

Configuring Two-Way Delay Measurement

Perform the following steps to configure two-way delay measurement:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)#ethernet sla

profile DMM type cfm-delay-measurement
  probe
   send burst every 5 seconds packet count 5 interval 1 seconds
  !
  schedule
   every 1 minutes for 40 seconds
  !
  statistics
   measure round-trip-delay
    buckets size 1 probes
    buckets archive 5
   !
   measure round-trip-jitter
    buckets size 1 probes
    buckets archive 1
   !
!
!
!
interface TenGigE0/0/0/10.1 l2transport
encapsulation dot1q 1
ethernet cfm
  mep domain DOWN0 service s10 mep-id 2001
   sla operation profile DMM target mep-id 6001
  !
```

On-Demand Ethernet SLA Operation for CFM Delay Measurement

To run an on-demand Ethernet SLA operation for CFM delay measurement, use this command in privileged EXEC mode:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router

ethernet sla on-demand operation type cfm-delay-measurement probe domain D1 source interface
 TenGigE 0/6/1/0 target mac-address 2.3.4
```

Running Configuration

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ethernet cfm peer meps
Mon Sep 11 12:09:44.534 UTC
Flags:
> - Ok                          I - Wrong interval
R - Remote Defect received      V - Wrong level
L - Loop (our MAC received)     T - Timed out
C - Config (our ID received)    M - Missing (cross-check)
X - Cross-connect (wrong MAID)  U - Unexpected (cross-check)
```

```
* - Multiple errors received    S - Standby

Domain UP6 (level 6), Service s6
Up MEP on FortyGigE0/0/1/2.1 MEP-ID 1
================================================================================
St     ID MAC Address    Port    Up/Downtime   CcmRcvd SeqErr   RDI Error
-- ----- -------------- ------- ----------- --------- ------ ----- -----
 >  4001 70e4.227c.2865 Up      00:01:27            0      0     0     0

Domain DOWN0 (level 0), Service s10
Down MEP on TenGigE0/0/0/10.1 MEP-ID 2001
================================================================================
St     ID MAC Address    Port    Up/Downtime   CcmRcvd SeqErr   RDI Error
-- ----- -------------- ------- ----------- --------- ------ ----- -----
 >  6001 70e4.227c.287a Up      00:02:11            0      0     0     0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show running-config
Mon Sep 11 12:10:18.467 UTC
interface TenGigE0/0/0/10.1 l2transport
 encapsulation dot1q 1
 ethernet cfm
  mep domain UP6 service s6 mep-id 1
    sla operation profile DMM target mep-id 6001
    sla operation profile test-slm target mep-id 6001
  !
 !
!
l2vpn
 xconnect group g1
  p2p p1
   interface TenGigE0/0/0/10.1
   interface FortyGigE0/0/1/2.1
  !
 !
!
end
```

Verification

Note Although one-way delay is included in the output, it is not supported because PTP synchronization of the router clocks is required. The values for the one-way delay measurements should be disregarded as they are not accurate.

```
Round Trip Delay
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
1 probes per bucket
Bucket started at 12:11:19 UTC Mon 11 September 2017 lasting 10s
Pkts sent: 10; Lost: 0 (0.0%); Corrupt: 0 (0.0%);
Misordered: 0 (0.0%); Duplicates: 0 (0.0%)
Result count: 10
Min: 0.009ms; Max: 0.010ms; Mean: 0.009ms; StdDev: 0.000ms


One-way Delay (Source->Dest)
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
1 probes per bucket

Bucket started at 12:11:19 UTC Mon 11 September 2017 lasting 10s
    Pkts sent: 10; Lost: 0 (0.0%); Corrupt: 0 (0.0%);
```

```
                Misordered: 0 (0.0%); Duplicates: 0 (0.0%)
    Result count: 10
    Min: 1912765.961ms; Max: 1912765.961ms; Mean: 1912765.961ms; StdDev: -2147483.648ms


One-way Delay (Dest->Source)
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
1 probes per bucket

Bucket started at 12:11:19 UTC Mon 11 September 2017 lasting 10s
    Pkts sent: 10; Lost: 0 (0.0%); Corrupt: 0 (0.0%);
                Misordered: 0 (0.0%); Duplicates: 0 (0.0%)
    Result count: 10
    Min: -1912765.952ms; Max: -1912765.951ms; Mean: -1912765.951ms; StdDev: -2147483.648ms


Round Trip Jitter
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
1 probes per bucket

Bucket started at 12:11:19 UTC Mon 11 September 2017 lasting 10s
    Pkts sent: 10; Lost: 0 (0.0%); Corrupt: 0 (0.0%);
                Misordered: 0 (0.0%); Duplicates: 0 (0.0%)
    Result count: 9
    Min: 0.000ms; Max: 0.001ms; Mean: 0.000ms; StdDev: 0.000ms


One-way Jitter (Source->Dest)
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
1 probes per bucket

Bucket started at 12:11:19 UTC Mon 11 September 2017 lasting 10s
    Pkts sent: 10; Lost: 0 (0.0%); Corrupt: 0 (0.0%);
                Misordered: 0 (0.0%); Duplicates: 0 (0.0%)
    Result count: 9
    Min: 0.000ms; Max: 0.000ms; Mean: 0.000ms; StdDev: 0.000ms


One-way Jitter (Dest->Source)
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
1 probes per bucket

Bucket started at 12:11:19 UTC Mon 11 September 2017 lasting 10s
    Pkts sent: 10; Lost: 0 (0.0%); Corrupt: 0 (0.0%);
                Misordered: 0 (0.0%); Duplicates: 0 (0.0%)
    Result count: 9
    Min: 0.000ms; Max: 0.001ms; Mean: 0.000ms; StdDev: 0.000ms


RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios#ethernet sla on-demand operation type cfm-syn probe domain DOWN0 source
interface tenGigE 0/0/0/10.1 target mep-id 6001
Mon Sep 11 12:12:39.259 UTC
Warning: Burst configuration is present and so this profile cannot be represented in the
MEF-SOAM-PM-MIB configuration tables. However, the statistics are still collected
On-demand operation 2 succesfully created
 / - Completed - statistics will be displayed shortly.

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios#show ethernet sla statistics on-demand id 2

Mon Sep 11 12:13:24.825 UTC
Source: Interface TenGigE0/0/0/10.1, Domain DOWN0
Destination: Target MEP-ID 6001
================================================================================
On-demand operation ID #2, packet type 'cfm-synthetic-loss-measurement'
```

```
Started at 12:12:41 UTC Mon 11 September 2017, runs once for 10s
Frame Loss Ratio calculated every 10s

One-way Frame Loss (Source->Dest)
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
1 probes per bucket

Bucket started at 12:12:41 UTC Mon 11 September 2017 lasting 10s
    Pkts sent: 100; Lost: 0 (0.0%); Corrupt: 0 (0.0%);
                   Misordered: 0 (0.0%); Duplicates: 0 (0.0%)
    Result count: 1
    Min: 0.000%; Max: 0.000%; Mean; 0.000%; StdDev: 0.000%; Overall: 0.000%


One-way Frame Loss (Dest->Source)
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
1 probes per bucket

Bucket started at 12:12:41 UTC Mon 11 September 2017 lasting 10s
    Pkts sent: 100; Lost: 0 (0.0%); Corrupt: 0 (0.0%);
                   Misordered: 0 (0.0%); Duplicates: 0 (0.0%)
    Result count: 1
    Min: 0.000%; Max: 0.000%; Mean; 0.000%; StdDev: 0.000%; Overall: 0.000%

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios#show ethernet cfm local meps verbose
Mon Sep 11 12:13:04.461 UTC
Domain UP6 (level 6), Service s6
Up MEP on FortyGigE0/0/1/2.1 MEP-ID 1
================================================================================
  Interface state: Up      MAC address: 008a.960f.c4a8
  Peer MEPs: 1 up, 0 with errors, 0 timed out (archived)
  Cross-check errors: 0 missing, 0 unexpected

  CCM generation enabled:  Yes, 1s (Remote Defect detected: No)
                           CCM processing offloaded to hardware
  AIS generation enabled:  No
  Sending AIS:             No
  Receiving AIS:           No

  No packets sent/received

Domain DOWN0 (level 0), Service s10
Down MEP on TenGigE0/0/0/10.1 MEP-ID 2001
================================================================================
  Interface state: Up      MAC address: 008a.960f.c428
  Peer MEPs: 1 up, 0 with errors, 0 timed out (archived)
  Cross-check errors: 0 missing, 0 unexpected

  CCM generation enabled:  Yes, 1s (Remote Defect detected: No)
                           CCM processing offloaded to hardware
  AIS generation enabled:  No
  Sending AIS:             No
  Receiving AIS:           No

  Packet        Sent      Received
  ------  ----------  ------------------------------------------------------------
  DMM             10             0
  DMR              0            10
  SLM            100             0
  SLR              0           100
```

Synthetic Loss Measurement

The loss measurement mechanism defined in Y.1731 can only be used in point-to-point networks, and only works when there is sufficient flow of data traffic. The difficulties with the Y.1731 loss measurement mechanism were recognized across the industry and hence an alternative mechanism has been defined and standardized for measuring loss of traffic.

This alternative mechanism does not measure the loss of the actual data traffic, but instead injects synthetic CFM frames and measures the loss of these synthetic frames. You can perform a statistical analysis to give an approximation of the loss of data traffic. This technique is called Synthetic Loss Measurement (SLM). SLM has been included in the latest version of the Y.1731 standard. Use SLA to perform the following measurements:

- One-way loss (Source to Destination)
- One-way loss (Destination to Source)

Starting with Cisco IOS XR Release 7.1.1, SLM is supported on the following Cisco NCS 540 variants:

- N540-28Z4C-SYS-A
- N540-28Z4C-SYS-D
- N540X-16Z4G8Q2C-A
- N540X-16Z4G8Q2C-D
- N540-12Z20G-SYS-A
- N540-12Z20G-SYS-D
- N540X-12Z16G-SYS-A
- N540X-12Z16G-SYS-D

Starting with release Cisco IOS XR Release 7.3.1, Y.1731 on SLM is supported on the following Cisco NCS 540 variants:

- N540X-6Z18G-SYS-A
- N540X-6Z18G-SYS-D
- N540X-8Z16G-SYS-A
- N540X-8Z16G-SYS-D

SLM supports the following:

- All Layer 2 transport interfaces, such as physical, bundle interfaces, Layer2 sub-interfaces, pseudowire Head-end interfaces or attachment circuits.
- Up and Down MEPs.
- Transparent passing of the SLM packets through the MIP without punting it to the software.

Starting with Cisco IOS XR 7.5.1 release, the two-way delay measurement feature value is enhanced from 100 to 1500 pps of SLM sessions on N540-28Z4C-SYS-A/D, N540X-16Z4G8Q2C-A/D, N540-12Z20G-SYS-A/D, N540X-12Z16G-SYS-A/D, N540X-6Z18G-SYS-A/D, and N540X-8Z16G-SYS-A/D variants.

Configuring Synthetic Loss Measurement

The following section describes how you can configure Synthetic Loss Measurement:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router (config)# ethernet sla

profile test-slm type cfm-synthetic-loss-measurement
  probe
   send packet every 1 seconds
   synthetic loss calculation packets 24
  !
  schedule
   every 3 minutes for 120 seconds
  !
  statistics
   measure one-way-loss-sd
    buckets size 1 probes
    buckets archive 5
   !
   measure one-way-loss-ds
    buckets size 1 probes
    buckets archive 5
!
!
!
!
interface TenGigE0/0/0/10.1 l2transport
encapsulation dot1q 1
ethernet cfm
  mep domain DOWN0 service s10 mep-id 2001
   sla operation profile test-slm target mep-id 6001
  !
```

Configuring an On-Demand Ethernet SLA Operation for CFM Synthetic Loss Measurement

To configure an on-demand Ethernet SLA operation for CFM synthetic loss measurement, use this command in privileged EXEC mode:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router ethernet sla on-demand operation type cfm-synthetic-loss-measurement
probe Domain DOWN0 source interface TenGigE0/0/0/10.1 target mac-address 2.3.4
```

Running Configuration

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ethernet sla statistics on-demand id 1
Mon Sep 11 12:12:00.699 UTC
Source: Interface TenGigE0/0/0/10.1, Domain DOWN0
Destination: Target MEP-ID 6001
================================================================================
On-demand operation ID #1, packet type 'cfm-delay-measurement'
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show running-config
Mon Sep 11 12:10:18.467 UTC
Building configuration...
!! IOS XR Configuration version = 6.4.1.14I
!! Last configuration change at Mon Sep 11 12:08:16 2017 by root
!
logging console disable
telnet vrf default ipv4 server max-servers 10
username root
group root-lr
group cisco-support
```

```
secret 5 $1$QJT3$94M5/wK5J0v/lpAu/wz31/
!
line console
exec-timeout 0 0
!
ethernet cfm
domain UP6 level 6 id null
  service s6 xconnect group g1 p2p p1 id number 6
   mip auto-create all ccm-learning
   continuity-check interval 1s
   mep crosscheck
    mep-id 4001
   !
  !
!
domain DOWN0 level 0 id null
 service s10 down-meps id number 10
   continuity-check interval 1s
   mep crosscheck
    mep-id 6001
   !
  !
!
!
interface TenGigE0/0/0/10.1 l2transport
encapsulation dot1q 1
ethernet cfm
  mep domain DOWN0 service s10 mep-id 2001
   sla operation profile DMM target mep-id 6001
   sla operation profile test-slm target mep-id 6001
  !
!
!

interface FortyGigE0/0/1/2.1 l2transport
 encapsulation dot1q 1
 ethernet cfm
  mep domain UP6 service s6 mep-id 1
    sla operation profile DMM target mep-id 6001
    sla operation profile test-slm target mep-id 6001
  !
 !
!
l2vpn
 xconnect group g1
  p2p p1
   interface TenGigE0/0/0/10.1
   interface FortyGigE0/0/1/2.1
  !
 !
!
end
```

Verification

```
Round Trip Delay
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
1 probes per bucket

Bucket started at 12:11:19 UTC Mon 11 September 2017 lasting 10s
    Pkts sent: 10; Lost: 0 (0.0%); Corrupt: 0 (0.0%);
                   Misordered: 0 (0.0%); Duplicates: 0 (0.0%)
    Result count: 10
    Min: 0.009ms; Max: 0.010ms; Mean: 0.009ms; StdDev: 0.000ms
```

```
One-way Delay (Source->Dest)
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
1 probes per bucket

Bucket started at 12:11:19 UTC Mon 11 September 2017 lasting 10s
    Pkts sent: 10; Lost: 0 (0.0%); Corrupt: 0 (0.0%);
                   Misordered: 0 (0.0%); Duplicates: 0 (0.0%)
    Result count: 10
    Min: 1912765.961ms; Max: 1912765.961ms; Mean: 1912765.961ms; StdDev: -2147483.648ms


One-way Delay (Dest->Source)
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
1 probes per bucket

Bucket started at 12:11:19 UTC Mon 11 September 2017 lasting 10s
    Pkts sent: 10; Lost: 0 (0.0%); Corrupt: 0 (0.0%);
                   Misordered: 0 (0.0%); Duplicates: 0 (0.0%)
    Result count: 10
    Min: -1912765.952ms; Max: -1912765.951ms; Mean: -1912765.951ms; StdDev: -2147483.648ms


Round Trip Jitter
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
1 probes per bucket

Bucket started at 12:11:19 UTC Mon 11 September 2017 lasting 10s
    Pkts sent: 10; Lost: 0 (0.0%); Corrupt: 0 (0.0%);
                   Misordered: 0 (0.0%); Duplicates: 0 (0.0%)
    Result count: 9
    Min: 0.000ms; Max: 0.001ms; Mean: 0.000ms; StdDev: 0.000ms


One-way Jitter (Source->Dest)
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
1 probes per bucket

Bucket started at 12:11:19 UTC Mon 11 September 2017 lasting 10s
    Pkts sent: 10; Lost: 0 (0.0%); Corrupt: 0 (0.0%);
                   Misordered: 0 (0.0%); Duplicates: 0 (0.0%)
    Result count: 9
    Min: 0.000ms; Max: 0.000ms; Mean: 0.000ms; StdDev: 0.000ms


One-way Jitter (Dest->Source)
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
1 probes per bucket

Bucket started at 12:11:19 UTC Mon 11 September 2017 lasting 10s
    Pkts sent: 10; Lost: 0 (0.0%); Corrupt: 0 (0.0%);
                   Misordered: 0 (0.0%); Duplicates: 0 (0.0%)
    Result count: 9
    Min: 0.000ms; Max: 0.001ms; Mean: 0.000ms; StdDev: 0.000ms
```

Unidirectional Link Detection Protocol

Unidirectional Link Detection (UDLD) is a single-hop physical link protocol for monitoring an ethernet link, including both point-to-point and shared media links. This is a Cisco-proprietary protocol to detect link problems, which are not detected at the physical link layer. This protocol is specifically targeted at possible

wiring errors, when using unbundled fiber links, where there can be a mismatch between the transmitting and receiving connections of a port.

Limitations

- UDLD must not be enabled on a Switched Port Analyzer (SPAN) source or a destination port.
- UDLD must not be enabled on a port that acts as a source or destination port for SPAN.

UDLD Operation

UDLD works by exchanging protocol packets between the neighboring devices. In order for UDLD to work, both devices on the link must support UDLD and have it enabled on respective ports.

UDLD sends an initial PROBE message on the ports where it is configured. Once UDLD receives a PROBE message, it sends periodic ECHO (hello) messages. Both messages identify the sender and its port, and also contain some information about the operating parameters of the protocol on that port. They also contain the device and port identifiers on the port for any neighbor devices that the local device has heard from. Similarly, each device gets to know where it is connected and where its neighbors are connected. This information can then be used to detect faults and miswiring conditions.

The protocol operates an aging mechanism where information from neighbors that is not periodically refreshed is eventually timed out. This mechanism can also be used to detect fault.

A FLUSH message is used to indicate that UDLD is disabled on a port, which causes the peers to remove the local device from their neighbor cache to prevent a time out.

If a problem is detected, UDLD disables the affected interface and also notifies the user. This is to avoid further network problems beyond traffic loss, such as loops which are not detected or prevented by Spanning Tree Protocol (STP).

Types of Fault Detection

UDLD can detect these types of faults:

- Transmit faults — These are cases where there is a failure in transmitting packets from the local port to the peer device, but packets are being received from the peer. These faults are caused by failure of the physical link (where notification at layer 1 of unidirectional link faults is not supported by the media) as well as packet path faults on the local or peer device.
- Miswiring faults — These are cases where the receiving and transmitting sides of a port on the local device are connected to different peer ports (on the same device or on different devices). This can occur when using unbundled fibers to connect fiber optic ports.
- Loopback faults — These are cases where the receiving and transmitting sides of a port are connected to each other, creating a loopback condition. This can be an intentional mode of operation, for certain types of testing, but UDLD must not be used in these cases.
- Receive faults — The protocol includes a heartbeat signal that is transmitted at a negotiated periodic interval to the peer device. Missed heartbeats can therefore be used to detect failures on the receiving side of the link (where they do not result in interface state changes). These could be caused by a unidirectional link with a failure only affecting the receiving side, or by a link which has developed a bidirectional fault. This detection depends on reliable, regular packet transmission by the peer device. For this reason, the UDLD protocol has two (configurable) modes of operation which determine the

behavior on a heartbeat timeout. These modes are described in the section UDLD Modes of Operation, on page 105.

UDLD Modes of Operation

UDLD can operate in these modes:

- **Normal mode**: In this mode, if a `Receive Fault` is detected, the user is informed and no further action is taken.
- **Aggressive mode**: In this mode, if a `Receive Fault` is detected, the user is informed and the affected port is disabled.

Note The difference of behavior between normal and aggressive modes is only seen in case of neighbor timeout. In all other cases, irrespective of the normal or aggressive mode, the system error disables a link once a unidirectional link is detected.

UDLD Aging Mechanism

This is a scenario that happens in a `Receive Fault` condition. Aging of UDLD information happens when the port that runs UDLD does not receive UDLD packets from the neighbor port for a duration of the hold time. The hold time for the port is dictated by the remote port and depends on the message interval at the remote side. The shorter the message interval, the shorter is the hold time and the faster the detection of the fault. The hold time is three times the message interval in Cisco IOS XR Software.

UDLD information can age out due to the high error rate on the port caused by a physical issue or duplex mismatch. Packet drops due to age out does not mean that the link is unidirectional. UDLD in normal mode does not disable such link.

It is important to choose the right message interval in order to ensure proper detection time. The message interval should be fast enough to detect the unidirectional link before the forwarding loop is created. The default message interval is 60 seconds. The detection time is equal to approximately three times the message interval. So, when using default UDLD timers, UDLD does not timeout the link faster than the STP aging time.

State Machines

UDLD uses two types of finite state machines (FSMs), generally referred as state machines. The `Main FSM` deals with all the phases of operation of the protocol while the `Detection FSM` handles only the phases that determine the status of a port.

Main FSM

The Main FSM can be in one of these states:

- **Init**: Protocol is initializing.

- **UDLD inactive**: Port is down or UDLD is disabled.
- **Linkup**: Port is up and running, and UDLD is in the process of detecting a neighbor.
- **Detection**: A hello message from a new neighbor is received and the Detection FSM determines the status of the port.
- **Advertisement**: The Detection FSM concludes that the port is operating correctly, periodic hello messages will continue to be sent and monitored from neighbors.
- **Port shutdown**: The Detection FSM detected a fault, or all neighbors were timed out in Aggressive mode, and as a result, the port is disabled.

Detection FSM

The Detection FSM can be in one of these states:

- **Unknown**: Detection has not yet been performed or UDLD has been disabled.
- **Unidirectional detected**: A unidirectional link condition has been detected because a neighbor does not see the local device. The port will be disabled.
- **Tx/Rx loop**: A loopback condition has been detected by receiving a TLV with the ports own identifiers. The port will be disabled.
- **Neighbor mismatch**: A miswiring condition has been detected in which a neighbor can identify other devices than those the local device can see. The port will be disabled.
- **Bidirectional detected**: UDLD hello messages are exchanged successfully in both directions. The port is operating correctly.

The Detection FSM handles only the phases that determine the status of a port.

Ethernet SLA Statistics Measurement in a Profile

Table 4: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
Enhancement to Ethernet SLA Statistics Measurement	Release 7.7.1	You can now configure the size of bins that are used to aggregate the results of Ethernet SLA statistics, in microseconds. The size of the bins is defined by the **width** value of delay and jitter measurement in Ethernet SLA statistics. You can configure the **width** value ranging from 1 to 10000000 microseconds. This enhancement provides granularity to store more accurate results of Ethernet SLA statistics in the aggregate bins. In earlier releases, you could only configure the **width** value for the delay and jitter measurement in milliseconds. This feature introduces the **usec** keyword in the **aggregate** command.

The Ethernet SLA feature supports measurement of one-way and two-way delay and jitter statistics, and one-way FLR statistics.

Ethernet SLA statistics measurement for network performance is performed by sending packets and storing data metrics such as:

- Round-trip delay time—The time for a packet to travel from source to destination and back to source again.
- Round-trip jitter—The variance in round-trip delay time (latency).
- One-way delay and jitter—The router also supports measurement of one-way delay or jitter from source to destination, or from destination to source.
- One-way frame loss—The router also supports measurement of one-way frame loss from source to destination, or from destination to source.

In addition to these metrics, these statistics are also kept for SLA probe packets:

- Packet loss count
- Packet corruption event
- Out-of-order event

- Frame Loss Ratio (FLR)

Counters for packet loss, corruption, and, out-of-order packets are kept for each bucket, and in each case, a percentage of the total number of samples for that bucket is reported (for example, 4% packet corruption). For delay, jitter, and loss statistics, the minimum, maximum, mean and standard deviation for the whole bucket are reported, as well as the individual samples or aggregated bins. Also, the overall FLR for the bucket, and individual FLR measurements or aggregated bins are reported for synthetic loss measurement statistics. The packet loss count is the overall number of measurement packets lost in either direction and the one-way FLR measures the loss in each direction separately.

When aggregation is enabled using the **aggregate** command, bins are created to store a count of the samples that fall within a certain value range, which is set by the **width** keyword. Only a counter of the number of results that fall within the range for each bin is stored. This uses less memory than storing individual results. When aggregation is not used, each sample is stored separately, which can provide a more accurate statistics analysis for the operation, but it is highly memory-intensive due to the independent storage of each sample.

A bucket represents a time period during which statistics are collected. All the results received during that time period are recorded in the corresponding bucket. If aggregation is enabled, each bucket has its own set of bins and counters, and only results relating to the measurements initiated during the time period represented by the bucket are included in those counters.

Frame Loss Ratio (FLR) is a primary attribute that can be calculated based on loss measurements. FLR is defined by the ratio of lost packets to sent packets and expressed as a percentage value. FLR is measured in each direction (source to destination and destination to source) separately. Availability is an attribute that is typically measured over a long period of time, such as weeks or months. The intent is to measure the proportion of time when there was prolonged high loss.

To configure one-way delay or jitter measurements, you must first configure the **profile (SLA)** command using the **type cfm-delay-measurement** form of the command.

For valid one-way delay results, you must have both local and remote devices time synchronized. In order to do this, you must select sources for frequency and time-of-day (ToD).

Frequency selection can be between any source of frequency available to the router, such as: BITS, GPS, SyncE, or PTP. The ToD selection is between the source selected for frequency and PTP or DTI. Note that NTP is not sufficient.

Configuration Guidelines

Caution Certain SLA configurations can use a large amount of memory which can affect the performance of other features on the router.

Before you configure Ethernet SLA, consider the following guidelines:

- Aggregation—Use of the **aggregate none** command significantly increases the amount of memory required because each individual measurement is recorded, rather than just counts for each aggregation bin. When you configure aggregation, consider that more bins will require more memory.
- Buckets archive—When you configure the **buckets archive** command, consider that the more history that is kept, the more memory will be used.
- Measuring two statistics (such as both delay and jitter) will use approximately twice as much memory as measuring one.

- Separate statistics are stored for one-way source-to-destination and destination-to-source measurements, which consumes twice as much memory as storing a single set of round-trip statistics.
- You must define the schedule before you configure SLA probe parameters to send probes for a particular profile. It is recommended to set up the profile—probe, statistics, and schedule before any commit.

Restrictions

One-way delay and jitter measurements are not supported by cfm-loopback profile types.

Configure Ethernet SLA Statistics Measurement in a Profile

To configure SLA statistics measurement in a profile, perform these steps:

1. Enter the Ethernet SLA configuration mode, using the **ethernet sla** command in Global Configuration mode.
2. Create an SLA operation profile with the **profile** *profile-name* **type cfm-delay-measurement** command.
3. Enable the collection of SLA statistics using the **statistics measure** {**one-way-delay-ds | one-way-delay-sd | one-way-jitter-ds | one-way-jitter-sd | round-trip-delay | round-trip-jitter | one-way-loss-ds | one-way-loss-sd**} command.
4. Configure the size and number of bins into which to aggregate the results of statistics collection. For delay measurements and data loss measurements, the default is that all values are aggregated into 1 bin. For synthetic loss measurements, by default the aggregation is disabled. Use the **aggregate** {**bins** *count* **width** [**usec**] *width* | **none**} command to configure the bins.
   - For delay and jitter measurements, you can configure a width value from 1 to 10000 milliseconds, if the number of bins is at least 2. To configure the width value in microseconds, use the **usec** option. You can configure the width value from 1 to 10000000 microseconds.
   - For data loss and synthetic loss measurements, you can configure a width value from 1 to 100 percentage points, if the number of bins is at least 2.
5. Configure the size of the buckets in which statistics are collected, using the **buckets size** *number* **probes** command.
6. Configure the number of buckets to store in memory using the **buckets archive** *number* command.
7. Save the configuration changes using the **end** or **commit** command.

Configuration Example

This example shows configuration of round-trip-delay statistics measurement in 5 bins each with a range of 123 microseconds:

```
Router(config)# ethernet sla
Router(config-sla)# profile test type cfm-delay-measurement
Router(config-sla-prof)# statistics measure round-trip-delay
Router(config-sla-prof-stat-cfg)# aggregate bins 5 width usec 123
Router(config-sla-prof-stat-cfg)# buckets size 1 probes
Router(config-sla-prof-stat-cfg)# buckets archive 50
Router(config-sla-prof-stat-cfg)# commit
```

This example shows configuration of round-trip-delay statistics measurement in 5 bins each with a range of 10 milliseconds:

```
Router(config)# ethernet sla
Router(config-sla)# profile test type cfm-delay-measurement
Router(config-sla-prof)# statistics measure round-trip-delay
Router(config-sla-prof-stat-cfg)# aggregate bins 5 width 10
Router(config-sla-prof-stat-cfg)# buckets size 1 probes
Router(config-sla-prof-stat-cfg)# buckets archive 50
Router(config-sla-prof-stat-cfg)# commit
```

Verification

This example displays aggregate bins configured with a range of 123 microseconds:

```
Router# show ethernet sla statistics detail
Tue Sep 28 07:59:22.340 PDT
Source: Interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/2, Domain dom1
Destination: Target MAC Address 0012.0034.0056
================================================================================
Profile 'test', packet type 'cfm-delay-measurement'
Scheduled to run every 1min first at 00:00:31 UTC for 10s

Round Trip Delay
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
1 probes per bucket

No stateful thresholds.

Bucket started at 07:56:31 PDT Tue 28 September 2021 lasting 10s
    Pkts sent: 10; Lost: 0 (0.0%); Corrupt: 0 (0.0%);
                  Misordered: 0 (0.0%); Duplicates: 0 (0.0%)
    Result count: 10
    Min: 0.000ms, occurred at 07:56:32 PDT Tue 28 September 2021
    Max: 1.000ms, occurred at 07:56:31 PDT Tue 28 September 2021
    Mean: 0.100ms; StdDev: 0.300ms

    Bins:
    Range                 Samples   Cum. Count     Mean
    ----------------  ----------  -----------  -------
        0 to 0.123 ms  9  (90.0%)   9  (90.0%)  0.000ms
    0.123 to 0.246 ms  0   (0.0%)   9  (90.0%)        -
    0.246 to 0.369 ms  0   (0.0%)   9  (90.0%)        -
    0.369 to 0.492 ms  0   (0.0%)   9  (90.0%)        -
    > 0.492        ms  1  (10.0%)  10 (100.0%)  1.000ms
```

This example displays aggregate bins configured with a range of 10 milliseconds:

```
Router# show ethernet sla statistics detail
Tue Sep 28 08:00:57.527 PDT
Source: Interface GigabitEthernet0/0/0/2, Domain dom1
Destination: Target MAC Address 0012.0034.0056
================================================================================
Profile 'test', packet type 'cfm-delay-measurement'
Scheduled to run every 1min first at 00:00:31 UTC for 10s

Round Trip Delay
~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
1 probes per bucket

No stateful thresholds.

Bucket started at 08:00:32 PDT Tue 28 September 2021 lasting 10s
```

```
Pkts sent: 9; Lost: 0 (0.0%); Corrupt: 0 (0.0%);
              Misordered: 1 (11.1%); Duplicates: 0 (0.0%)
Result count: 9
Min: 0.000ms, occurred at 08:00:32 PDT Tue 28 September 2021
Max: 0.000ms, occurred at 08:00:32 PDT Tue 28 September 2021
Mean: 0.000ms; StdDev: 0.000ms

Results suspect due to a probe starting mid-way through a bucket

Bins:
Range            Samples  Cum. Count     Mean
-----------  ----------  ----------  -------
 0 to 10 ms  9 (100.0%)  9 (100.0%)  0.000ms
10 to 20 ms  0   (0.0%)  9 (100.0%)        -
20 to 30 ms  0   (0.0%)  9 (100.0%)        -
30 to 40 ms  0   (0.0%)  9 (100.0%)        -
> 40     ms  0   (0.0%)  9 (100.0%)        -
```

Minimum delay bin

Y.1731 Ethernet SLA is used to collect and optionally aggregate performance metrics over time. The data collected during a specific timeframe is organized into buckets. When aggregation is enabled, each bucket contains a set of bins, which helps reduce memory consumption.

With the minimum-delay bin feature, you can configure a distinct width for the first bin. This prevents the wastage of bins that might otherwise be empty due to the inherent speed of light delays. The remaining bins can then focus on capturing variations in observed delays.

Table 5: Feature History Table

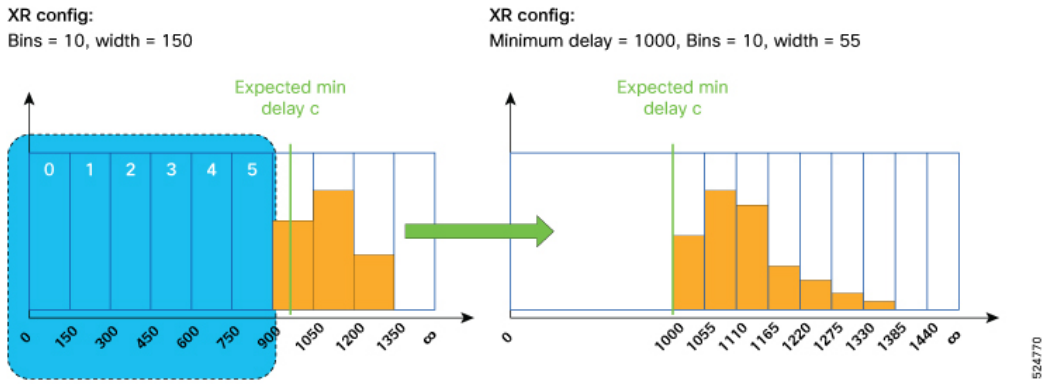
Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description

Information about minimum-delay bin

In situations where a delay is expected in first few iterations, you can specify the width of the first bin independently using the **minimum-delay** keyword in statistics aggregation configuration. See below examples to configure aggregation with and without minimum-delay support.

The Comparision diagram shows the comparision between statistics aggregation before and after minimum-delay configuration.

Figure 14: Comparision diagram before and after minimum-delay configuration



Example 1: Configuring aggregation without minimum-delay

```
statistics measure round-trip-delay aggregate bins 10 width 150
```

This configuration has 10 bins and the results being aggregated into the ranges 0-150, 150-300, 300-450 and so on, until 1350+, where the last bin has infinite width to hold all values greater than 1350.

Example 2: Configuring aggregation with minimum-delay

```
statistics measure round-trip-delay aggregate bins 10 width 55 minimum-delay 1000
```

Here, the width of the first bin is 1000ms and not 150ms. The width of the other nine bins are aggregated into 1000-1055, 1055-1110, 1110-1165, and so on. This leads to increased resolution with the same number of bins, as all the bins are utilized.

Note To specify the values of width and minimum-delay in microseconds instead of milliseconds, you must use the **usec** keyword. For more information, see **aggregate** command.

Configure minimum delay bin support

Before you begin

Make sure that the number of bins for aggregate configuration is at least two.

Procedure

Step 1 Configure an SLA Operation profile and statistics measurement for the Profile.

Example:

Configure Ethernet Frame Delay Measurement for L2VPN Services.

```
Router(config)# ethernet sla
Router(config-sla)# profile EVC-1 type cfm-delay-measurement
Router(config-sla-prof)# probe
Router(config-sla-prof-pb)# send packet every 1 seconds
Router(config-sla-prof-pb)# schedule
Router(config-sla-prof-schedule)# every 3 minutes for 120 seconds
```

```
Router(config-sla-prof-schedule)# statistics
Router(config-sla-prof-stat)# measure round-trip-delay
Router(config-sla-prof-stat-cfg)# buckets size 1 probes
Router(config-sla-prof-stat-cfg)# buckets archive 5
Router(config-sla-prof-stat-cfg)# commit
```

Step 2 Configure aggregation for the SLA profile and then configure the width of the first bin by using the **minimum-delay** keyword.

Example:

Configure aggregation with bin count of 4 and the width of the first bin as 60 ms.

```
Router(config-sla-prof-schedule)# statistics
Router(config-sla-prof-stat)# measure round-trip-delay
Router(config-sla-prof-stat-cfg)# aggregate bins 5 width 10 minimum-delay 30
Router(config-sla-prof-stat-cfg)# buckets size 1 probes
Router(config-sla-prof-stat-cfg)# buckets archive 5
Router(config-sla-prof-stat-cfg)# commit
```

Step 3 View the running configuration using the **show running-config** command.

Example:

```
ethernet sla
 profile EVC-1 type cfm-delay-measurement
  probe
   send packet every 1 seconds
  !
  schedule
   every 3 minutes for 120 seconds
  !
  statistics
   measure round-trip-delay
    aggregate bins 4 width 90 minimum-delay 60
    buckets size 1 probes
    buckets archive 5
   !
```

Step 4 Verification

Verify the output by using the below show commands.

- **show** *protocol***sla operations detail**
- **show** *protocol***sla probes**
- **show** *protocol***sla statistics**

Example:

Use the below show command to verify the output.

```
router# show ethernet sla statistics history detail on-demand
```

Below is a sample output.

```
Bucket started at 15:38 on Tue 02 Jul 2024, lasting 1 hour:
    Pkts sent: 1200; …
    Result count: 60
    Min: 13ms; Max: 154ms; Mean: 28ms; StdDev: 11ms
    Bins:
    Range               Samples    Cum. Count      Mean
    -------------  ------------  ------------  --------
```

```
 0 to 30 ms        20 (2%)        20 (2%)        37ms
30 to 35 ms       909 (61%)      929 (77%)       67ms
35 to 40 ms       212 (17%)     1141 (95%)       75ms
40 to 45 ms        98 (11%)     1141 (95%)       75ms
 > 45    ms        55  (5%)     1196             90ms
```

Link loss forwarding

Link loss forwarding (LLF) is a mechanism used in networking to propagate the status of a network link to other connected devices. When a link experiences a failure or goes down, LLF

- ensures that link failure information is forwarded to other network devices, and
- takes appropriate actions to maintain network stability and performance.

Table 6: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
Link loss forwarding	Release 7.5.1	We have now enabled high availability between two bridged interfaces by disabling both interfaces if any one of them fails. Such high availability is enabled because the functionality allows a fault detected on one side of a CFM-protected network to propagate to the other, allowing the device to re-route around the failure. In earlier releases, a failure on one bridged interface did not disable the other interface, and connected devices remained unaware of the link loss. The feature introduces these changes: **CLI**: New **propagate-remote-status** command

LLF uses Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) to transmit notification of a signal loss or fault across the network. When there is a fault on a link to a device on one side of the network, the connection to the port on the other side needs to be shutdown so that the device re-routes the traffic.

You can enable LLF on a network by one of the following methods:

- **Link State Monitor and Propagation by CFM**: LLF uses Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) to transmit notification of a signal loss or fault across the network. When there is a fault on a link to a device on one side of the network, the connection to the port on the other side needs to be shutdown so that the device re-routes the traffic.
- **Remote Link State Propagation**: LLF uses this method for Layer 2 transport events to propagate link failures to remote endpoints. When a link failure occurs, LLF ensures that the failure is communicated to other devices in the network. This enables the other devices to take appropriate action, such as rerouting traffic or triggering failover mechanisms.

Link state monitor and propagation by CFM

Link state monitoring involves tracking the status of network links to ensure they are operational and performing as expected. This can include monitoring for link failures, degradations, or other issues that might affect network performance. When a link state changes, this information needs to be propagated throughout the network so that other devices can adjust their routing tables and network operations accordingly.

When there is a fault on a link to a device on one side of the network, the connection to the port on the other side needs to be shutdown so that the device re-routes the traffic. This requires the interface to be TX-disabled.

Link Loss Forwarding (LLF) uses Connectivity Fault Management (CFM) to transmit notification of a signal loss or fault across the network. If a local attachment circuit (AC) on a bridged interface fails, one of the following signals or packet types are sent to the neighboring device:

- Continuity Check Message (CCM) – The CCMs are heartbeat messages exchanged periodically between all the Maintenance End Points (MEPs) in a service. MEPs are members of a particular service within a domain and are responsible for sourcing and sinking CFM frames. Each MEP sends out multicast CCMs, and receives CCMs from all the other MEPs in the service. This allows each MEP to discover its peer MEPs, and to verify that there is connectivity between them.
- Alarm Indication Signal (AIS) – These are messages sent periodically by MEPs that have detected a fault, to the MEPs in the next highest maintenance domain level.
- Client Signal Fail (CSF) – A mechanism for error detection. When a MEP detects an issue, the MEP sends CSF packets to its peer MEPs.

For more information on MEPs, see Maintenance Points, on page 50.

Connectivity Fault Management Daemon (CFMD) and Ether-MA are processes that run on the control plane of the router. Ether-MA handles owner channel communication and resyncs from CFMD, L2VPN, and other Ether MA processes. This module handles the TX-disable and TX-enable events, based on the notifications from CFMD.

When the system receives a CCM or AIS with fault indication, or a CSF error packet, CFMD communicates with Ether-MA to TX-disable the interface.

When an interface receives a fault notification, the transitions are handled as follows:

- The interface is transitioned to TX-disable state.
- A restore timer with a 3.5 * CCM packet interval is started.
- If no other fault packets are received after the restore timer ends, the TX-disable state is cleared and the interface is transitioned to TX-enable state.

Restrictions for link loss forwarding

- LLF is not supported on sub-interfaces.
- LLF is supported only on up MEPs.
- The restore timer is not provided for transitions of an interface from TX-enabled state to TX-disabled state.

Configure link loss forwarding

This example shows how to configure LLF on a network by using the `propagate-remote-status` command.

```
/* Enable LLF on an interface */
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface GigabitEthernet0/2/0/0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm)# ethernet cfm
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm)# mep domain foo service bar mep-id 1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm)# propagate remote-status
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-cfm)# commit
```

Optional Configuration for Client Signal Fail (CSF)

Note CSF configuration is required for inter-operation with certain client-end setups that contain devices from other clients.

```
ethernet cfm
  domain <domain> level <level> service <service> <type>
    csf [<interval> {1s | 1m}] [cos <cos>]
      log csf
```

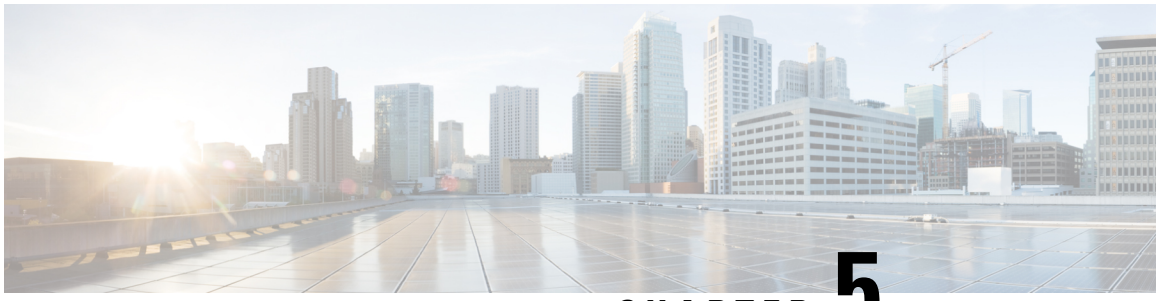
Running Configuration

```
ethernet cfm
 domain dom1 level 1
  service ser1 bridge group up-meps bridge-domain up-mep
   continuity-check interval 1m
   csf interval 1m cos 4
   csf-logging
  !
 !
!
interface GigabitEthernet0/2/0/0
 ethernet cfm
  mep domain dom1 service ser1 mep-id 1
   propagate-remote-status
  !
 !
!
```

Verification

```
show ethernet cfm interfaces [ <interface> ] llf [ location <node> ]
Defects (from at least one peer MEP):
 A - AIS received                I - Wrong interval
 R - Remote Defect received      V - Wrong Level
 L - Loop (our MAC received)     T - Timed out (archived)
 C - Config (our ID received)    M - Missing (cross-check)
 X - Cross-connect (wrong MAID)  U - Unexpected (cross-check)
 P - Peer port down              F - CSF received


GigabitEthernet0/1/0/0
  MEP Defects                           Restore Timer
----- ---------------------------------- --------------
  100 R                                 Not running
  101 None                              1500ms  remaining
  102 RPF                               Not running
```

```
GigabitEthernet0/1/0/1
  MEP Defects                           Restore Timer
----- ---------------------------------- --------------
  110 None                              1500ms  remaining

GigabitEthernet0/1/0/2
  MEP Defects                           Restore Timer
----- ---------------------------------- --------------
  120 P                                 Not running
```



CHAPTER 5

Integrated Routing and Bridging

The BVI is a virtual interface within the router that acts like a normal routed interface. The BVI does not support bridging itself, but acts as a gateway for the corresponding bridge-domain to a routed interface within the router.

Aside from supporting a configurable MAC address, a BVI supports only Layer 3 attributes, and has the following characteristics:

- Uses a MAC address taken from the local chassis MAC address pool, unless overridden at the BVI interface.
- Is configured as an interface type using the **interface bvi** command and uses an IPv4 address that is in the same subnet as the hosts on the segments of the bridged domain. The BVI also supports secondary addresses.
- The BVI identifier is independent of the bridge-domain identifier. These identifiers do not need to correlate like they do in Cisco IOS software.
- Is associated to a bridge group using the **routed interface bvi** command.

- Supported Features on a BVI, on page 119
- BVI Interface and Line Protocol States, on page 120
- Prerequisites for Configuring IRB, on page 120
- Restrictions for Configuring IRB, on page 121
- How to Configure IRB, on page 122
- Additional Information on IRB, on page 128
- Packet Flows Using IRB, on page 128
- Configuration Examples for IRB, on page 129

Supported Features on a BVI

- These interface commands are supported on a BVI:
  - **arp purge-delay**
  - arp timeout
  - **bandwidth** (The default is 10 Gbps and is used as the cost metric for routing protocols for the BVI)
  - **ipv4**

- **ipv6**
- **mac-address**
- **shutdown**

- The BVI supports IP helper addressing and secondary IP addressing.
- BVI does not support MTU configuration using **mtu** command, which is for physical interfaces. However, **ip mtu** and **ipv6 mtu** commands, which are logical interface commands, are supported.

BVI Interface and Line Protocol States

Like typical interface states on the router, a BVI has both an Interface and Line Protocol state.

- The BVI interface state is Up when the following occurs:
  - The BVI interface is created.
  - The bridge-domain configured with the **routed interface bvi** command has at least one active bridge port available, either an Attachment Circuit or a Pseudowire.

    Attachment Circuit (AC) is a physical or logical interface that connects a customer network to a service provider network. Pseudowire (PW) is a virtual connection that emulates a physical wire, enabling data transport across a packet-switched network.

Note A BVI will be moved to the Down state if all of the bridge ports (Ethernet flow points [EFPs]) associated with the bridge domain for that BVI are down. However, the BVI will remain up if at least one bridgeport is up, even if all EFPs are down.

- These characteristics determine when the the BVI line protocol state is up:
  - The bridge-domain is in Up state.
  - The BVI IP address is not in conflict with any other IP address on another active interface in the router.

Prerequisites for Configuring IRB

You must be in a user group associated with a task group that includes the proper task IDs. The command reference guides include the task IDs required for each command. If you suspect user group assignment is preventing you from using a command, contact your AAA administrator for assistance.

Before configuring IRB, be sure that these tasks and conditions are met:

- Know the IP addressing and other Layer 3 information to be configured on the bridge virtual interface (BVI).

- Complete MAC address planning if you decide to override the common global MAC address for all BVIs.
- Be sure that the BVI network address is being advertised by running static or dynamic routing on the BVI interface.

Restrictions for Configuring IRB

Before configuring IRB, consider these restrictions:

- Only one BVI can be configured in any bridge domain.
- The same BVI can not be configured in multiple bridge domains.
- MTU configuration and fragmentation of packets is not supported on BVI interfaces.
- IGP ECMP path list with mix of BVI and non-BVI paths is not supported.
- The following areas are *not* supported on the BVI:
  - Access Control Lists (ACLs). However, Layer 2 ACLs can be configured on each Layer 2 port of the bridge domain.
  - IP fast reroute (FRR)
  - TI-LFA
  - SR
  - LDP
  - NetFlow
  - MoFRR
  - Quality of Service (QoS)
  - Traffic mirroring
  - Unnumbered interface for BVI
  - Video monitoring (Vidmon)
  - IRB with 802.1ah (BVI and Provider Backbone Bridge (PBB) should not be configured in the same bridge domain).
  - PIM snooping. (Need to use selective flood.)
  - VRF-aware DHCP relay
- The following areas are *not* supported on the Layer2 bridging (with BVI):
  - Static mac entry configuration in Bridge.
  - Mac ageing configuration at global config mode.
  - MAC Learning Disable.
  - Vlan rewrite.

- QOS configuration on BVI interface is not supported for egress.
- Label allocation mode per-CE with BVI is not supported in an access network along with PE-CE protocols enabled.

How to Configure IRB

This section includes the following configuration tasks:

Configuring the Bridge Group Virtual Interface

To configure a BVI, complete the following steps.

Configuration Guidelines

Consider the following guidelines when configuring the BVI:

- The BVI must be assigned an IPv4 or IPv6 address that is in the same subnet as the hosts in the bridged segments.
- If the bridged network has multiple IP networks, then the BVI must be assigned secondary IP addresses for each network.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
Router# configure
```

Enters the global configuration mode.

Step 2 **interface bvi** *identifier*

Example:

```
Router(config)# interface bvi 1
```

Specifies or creates a BVI, where *identifier* is a number from 1 to 65535.

Step 3 **ipv4 address** *ipv4-address mask* [**secondary**] **ipv6 address** *ipv6-prefix/prefix-length* [**eui-64**] [**route-tag** *route-tag value*]

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# ipv4 address 10.10.0.4 255.255.255.0
```

Specifies a primary or secondary IPv4 address or an IPv6 address for an interface.

Step 4 **arp purge-delay** *seconds*

Example:

```
Router(config-if)#arp purge-delay 120
```

(Optional) Specifies the amount of time (in *seconds*) to delay purging of Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) table entries when the interface goes down.

The range is 1 to 65535. By default purge delay is not configured.

Step 5 **arp timeout** *seconds*

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# arp timeout 12200
```

(Optional) Specifies how long dynamic entries learned on the interface remain in the ARP cache.

The range is 30 to 2144448000 seconds. The default is 14,400 seconds (4 hours).

Step 6 **bandwidth** *rate*

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# bandwidth 1000000
```

(Optional) Specifies the amount of bandwidth (in kilobits per second) to be allocated on the interface. This number is used as the cost metric in routing protocols for the BVI.

The range is 0 to 4294967295. The default is 10000000 (10 Gbps).

Step 7 **end** or **commit**

Example:

```
Router(config-if)# end
```

or

```
Router(config-if)# commit
```

Saves configuration changes.

- When you issue the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes:

  ```
  Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)?
  [cancel]:
  ```

  Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.

  Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.

  Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.

- Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Configuring the Layer 2 AC Interfaces

To configure the Layer 2 Attachment Circuit (AC) interfaces for routing by a BVI, complete these steps.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **interface** [**HundredGigE | TenGigE**] **l2transport**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface TenGigE 0/0/0/0.1 l2transport
```

Enables Layer 2 transport mode on a Gigabit Ethernet or 10-Gigabit Ethernet interface or subinterface and enters interface or subinterface configuration mode.

Step 3 **end** or **commit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# end
```

or

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# commit
```

Saves configuration changes.

- When you issue the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes:

```
Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)?
[cancel]:
```

- Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.
- Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.
- Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.
- Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Configuring a Bridge Group and Assigning Interfaces to a Bridge Domain

To configure a bridge group and assign interfaces to a bridge domain, complete the following steps.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **l2vpn**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# l2vpn
```

Enters L2VPN configuration mode.

Step 3 **bridge group** *bridge-group-name*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-l2vpn)# bridge group 10
```

Creates a bridge group and enters L2VPN bridge group configuration mode.

Step 4 **bridge-domain** *bridge-domain-name*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-l2vpn-bg)# bridge-domain BD_1
```

Creates a bridge domain and enters L2VPN bridge group bridge domain configuration mode.

Step 5 **interface** [**HundredGigE | TenGigE**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-l2vpn-bg-bd)# interface HundredGigE 0/0/1/0.1
```

Associates the 100-Gigabit Ethernet or 10-Gigabit Ethernet interface with the specified bridge domain and enters L2VPN bridge group bridge domain attachment circuit configuration mode.

Repeat this step for as many interfaces as you want to associate with the bridge domain.

Step 6 **end** or **commit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-l2vpn-bg-bd-ac)# end
```

or

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-l2vpn-bg-bd-ac)# commit
```

Saves configuration changes.

- When you issue the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes:

```
Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)?
[cancel]:
```

- Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.
- Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.
- Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.
- Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Associating the BVI as the Routed Interface on a Bridge Domain

To associate the BVI as the routed interface on a bridge domain, complete the following steps.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **l2vpn**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# l2vpn
```

Enters L2VPN configuration mode.

Step 3 **bridge group** *bridge-group-name*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-l2vpn)# bridge group BG_test
```

Creates a bridge group and enters L2VPN bridge group configuration mode.

Step 4 **bridge-domain** *bridge-domain-name*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-l2vpn-bg)# bridge-domain 1
```

Creates a bridge domain and enters L2VPN bridge group bridge domain configuration mode.

Step 5 **routed interface bvi** *identifier*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-l2vpn-bg-bd)# routed interface bvi 1
```

Associates the specified BVI as the routed interface for the interfaces assigned to the bridge domain.

Step 6 **end** or **commit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-l2vpn-bg-bd)# end
```

or

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-l2vpn-bg-bd)# commit
```

Saves configuration changes.

- When you issue the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes:

```
Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)?
[cancel]:
```

- Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.
- Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.
- Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.
- Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Displaying Information About a BVI

To display information about BVI status and packet counters, use the following commands:

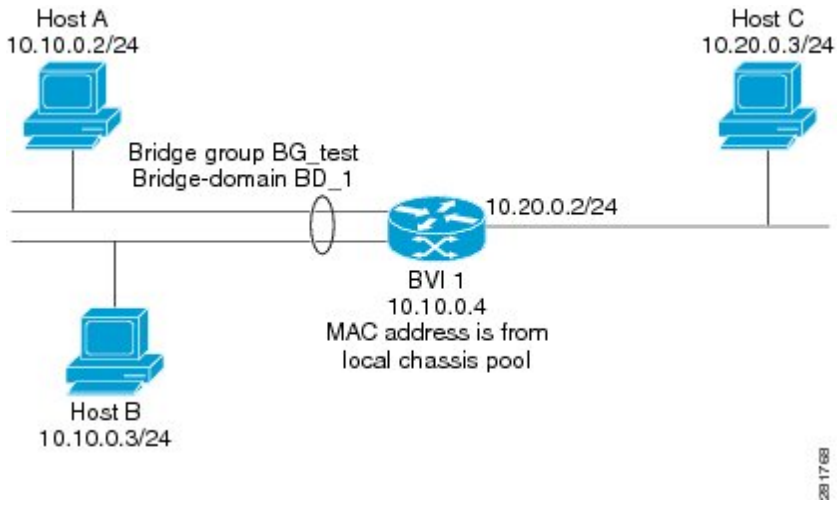
show interfaces bvi *identifier* [**accounting** | **brief** | **description** | **detail**]	Displays interface status, line protocol state, and packet counters for the specified BVI.
show adjacency bvi *identifier* [**detail** | **remote**]	Displays packet and byte transmit counters per adjacency to the specified BVI.
show l2vpn bridge-domain detail	Displays the reason that a BVI is down.

Additional Information on IRB

Packet Flows Using IRB

This figure shows a simplified functional diagram of an IRB implementation to describe different packet flows between Host A, B, and C. In this example, Host C is on a network with a connection to the same router. In reality, another router could be between Host C and the router shown.

Figure 15: IRB Packet Flows Between Hosts



When IRB is configured on a router, the following processing happens:

- ARP requests are resolved between the hosts and BVI that are part of the bridge domain.
- All packets from a host on a bridged interface go to the BVI if the destination MAC address matches the BVI MAC address. Otherwise, the packets are bridged.
- For packets destined for a host on a routed network, the BVI forwards the packets to the routing engine before sending them out a routed interface.
- All packets either from or destined to a host on a bridged interface go to the BVI first (unless the packet is destined for a host on the bridge domain).
- For packets that are destined for a host on a segment in the bridge domain that come in to the router on a routed interface, the BVI forwards the packet to the bridging engine, which forwards it through the appropriate bridged interface.

Packet Flows When Host A Sends to Host B on the Bridge Domain

When Host A sends data to Host B in the bridge domain on the 10.10.0.0 network, no routing occurs. The hosts are on the same subnet and the packets are bridged between their segment interfaces on the router.

Packet Flows When Host A Sends to Host C From the Bridge Domain to a Routed Interface

Using host information from this figure, the following occurs when Host A sends data to Host C from the IRB bridging domain to the routing domain:

- Host A sends the packet to the BVI (as long any ARP request the is resolved between the host and the BVI). The packet has the following information:
  - Source MAC address of host A.
  - Destination MAC address of the BVI.
- Since Host C is on another network and needs to be routed, the BVI forwards the packet to the routed interface with the following information:
  - IP source MAC address of Host A (10.10.0.2) is changed to the MAC address of the BVI (10.10.0.4).
  - IP destination address is the IP address of Host C (10.20.0.3).
- Interface 10.20.0.2 sees receipt of a packet from the routed BVI 10.10.0.4. The packet is then routed through interface 10.20.0.2 to Host C.

Packet Flows When Host C Sends to Host B From a Routed Interface to the Bridge Domain

Using host information from this figure, the following occurs when Host C sends data to Host B from the IRB routing domain to the bridging domain:

- The packet comes into the routing domain with the following information:
  - MAC source address—MAC of Host C.
  - MAC destination address—MAC of the 10.20.0.2 ingress interface.
  - IP source address—IP address of Host C (10.20.0.3).
  - IP destination address—IP address of Host B (10.10.0.3).
- When interface 10.20.0.2 receives the packet, it looks in the routing table and determines that the packet needs to be forwarded to the BVI at 10.10.0.4.
- The routing engine captures the packet that is destined for the BVI and forwards it to the BVI's corresponding bridge domain. The packet is then bridged through the appropriate interface if the destination MAC address for Host B appears in the bridging table, or is flooded on all interfaces in the bridge group if the address is not in the bridging table.

Configuration Examples for IRB

This section provides the following configuration examples:

Basic IRB Configuration: Example

The following example shows how to perform the most basic IRB configuration:

```
! Configure the BVI and its IPv4 address
!
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)#interface bvi 1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)#ipv4 address 10.10.0.4 255.255.255.0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if))# exit
!
! Configure the Layer 2 AC interface
!
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)#interface HundredGigE 0/0/1/0 l2transport
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if))# exit
!
! Configure the L2VPN bridge group and bridge domain and assign interfaces
!
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)#l2vpn
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-l2vpn)#bridge group 10
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-l2vpn-bg)#bridge-domain 1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-l2vpn-bg-bd)#interface HundredGigE 0/0/1/0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-l2vpn-bg-bd-if)# exit
!
! Associate a BVI to the bridge domain
!
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-l2vpn-bg-bd)# routed interface bvi 1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-l2vpn-bg-bd)# commit
```

IPv4 Addressing on a BVI Supporting Multiple IP Networks: Example

The following example shows how to configure secondary IPv4 addresses on a BVI that supports bridge domains for the 10.10.10.0/24, 10.20.20.0/24, and 10.30.30.0/24 networks. In this example, the BVI must have an address on each of the bridge domain networks:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)#interface bvi 1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)#ipv4 address 10.10.10.4 255.255.255.0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)#ipv4 address 10.20.20.4 255.255.255.0 secondary
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)#ipv4 address 10.30.30.4 255.255.255.0 secondary
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if))# commit
```

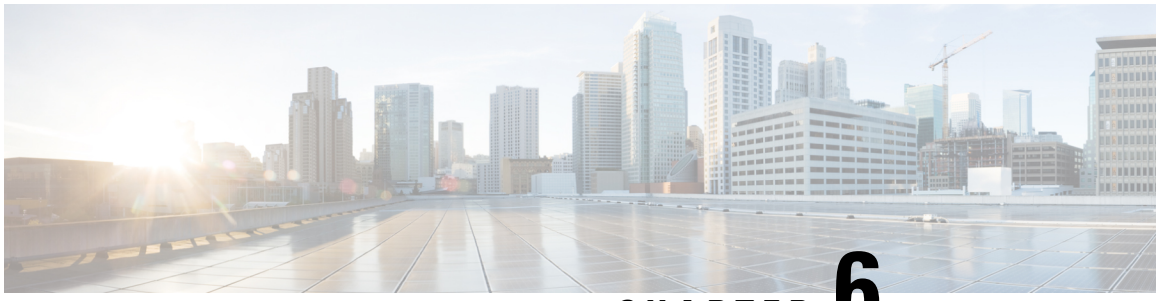
IRB With BVI and VRRP Configuration: Example

This example shows a partial router configuration for the relevant configuration areas for IRB support of a BVI and VRRP:

Note VRRPv6 is also supported.

```
l2vpn
 bridge group IRB
  bridge-domain IRB-EDGE
   interface TenGigE0/0/0/8
```

```
!
   routed interface BVI 100
!
interface TenGigE0/0/0/8
  l2transport
!
interface BVI 100
 ipv4 address 10.21.1.1 255.255.255.0
!
router vrrp
 interface BVI 100
 address-family ipv4
 vrrp 1
 address 10.21.1.100
 priority 100
 !
```



CHAPTER 6

Configuring Link Bundling

The Link Bundling feature allows you to group multiple point-to-point links together into one logical link and provide higher bidirectional bandwidth, redundancy, and load balancing between two routers. A virtual interface is assigned to the bundled link. The component links can be dynamically added and deleted from the virtual interface.

The virtual interface is treated as a single interface on which one can configure an IP address and other software features used by the link bundle. Packets sent to the link bundle are forwarded to one of the links in the bundle.

A link bundle is simply a group of ports that are bundled together and act as a single link. The advantages of link bundles are as follows:

- Multiple links can span several line cards to form a single interface. Thus, the failure of a single link does not cause a loss of connectivity.
- Bundled interfaces increase bandwidth availability, because traffic is forwarded over all available members of the bundle. Therefore, traffic can flow on the available links if one of the links within a bundle fails. Bandwidth can be added without interrupting packet flow.

Cisco IOS XR software supports the following method of forming bundles of Ethernet interfaces:

- IEEE 802.3ad—Standard technology that employs a Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) to ensure that all the member links in a bundle are compatible. Links that are incompatible or have failed are automatically removed from a bundle.

- Compatible Characteristics of Ethernet Link Bundles, on page 133
- Information About Configuring Link Bundling, on page 136
- Configuring Ethernet Link Bundles, on page 137
- VLANs on an Ethernet Link Bundle, on page 141
- Configuring VLAN over Bundles, on page 141
- LACP Short Period Time Intervals, on page 145
- Configuring the Default LACP Short Period Time Interval, on page 146
- Configuring Custom LACP Short Period Time Intervals, on page 147
- Bundle Consistency Checker, on page 152

Compatible Characteristics of Ethernet Link Bundles

This list describes the properties of ethernet link bundles:

- The router supports mixed speed bundles. Mixed speed bundles allow member links of different bandwidth to be configured as active members in a single bundle. The ratio of the bandwidth for bundle members must not exceed 10. Also, the total weight of the bundle must not exceed 64.
- The weight of each bundle member is the ratio of its bandwidth to the lowest bandwidth member. Total weight of the bundle is the sum of weights or relative bandwidth of each bundle member. Since the weight for a bundle member is greater than or equal to 1 and less than or equal to 10, the total member of links in a bundle is less than 64 in mixed bundle case.
- Any type of Ethernet interfaces can be bundled, with or without the use of LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol).
- A single router can support maximum number of bundle interfaces. Link bundles of only physical interfaces are supported. Following are maximum numbers of bundle interfaces supported on NCS 540 variants:

  Medium Density XR NCS 540 - N540-24Z8Q2C-SYS, N540-28Z4C-SYS, N540X-ACC-SYS, N540-ACC-SYS

  Medium Density XR NCS 540 - N540-28Z4C-SYS-A, N540-28Z4C-SYS-D, N540X-16Z4G8Q2C-A, N540X-16Z4G8Q2C-D, N540X-16Z8Q2C-D, N540-12Z20G-SYS-A,N540-12Z20G-SYS-D, N540X-12Z16G-SYS-A, N540X-12Z16G-SYS-D

  Small Density XR NCS 540 - N540X-6Z18G-SYS-A, N540X-6Z18G-SYS-D, N540X-8Z16G-SYS-A, N540X-8Z16G-SYS-D

  Table 7: Bundle Interfaces on NCS 540 Routers

Supported Features	Medium Density XR NCS 540		Small Density XR NCS 540
Bundle Interfaces	256	256	24
Maximum bundle members	64	64	8
Bundle sub-interfaces	1024	1024	1024
Layer2 Bundle Interfaces	1023	1023	1023
hw-module profile bundle-scale command	Supported	Not Supported	Not Supported

- The **hw-module profile bundle-scale <256/512/1024>** command is supported only on the following NCS 540 router variants:

  N540-24Z8Q2C-SYS, N540-28Z4C-SYS, N540X-ACC-SYS, N540-ACC-SYS

  The total number of supported bundle members with HQoS profile on Layer2 and Layer3 interfaces:

  - **hw-module profile bundle-scale 256** —Total bundle interfaces + total bundle sub-interfaces is 256
  - **hw-module profile bundle-scale 512** — Total bundle interfaces + total bundle sub-interfaces is 512
  - **hw-module profile bundle-scale 1024** — Total bundle interfaces + total bundle sub-interfaces is 1024

- The following limitations apply to bundle sub-interfaces and the number of members per bundle on Layer3 interfaces on Medium Density XR NCS 540 variants:
  - Maximum of 1024 bundle sub-interfaces, each containing up to 16 member-links.
  - Maximum of 256 bundle sub-interfaces, each containing up to 64 member-links
  - Maximum of 512 bundle sub-interfaces, each containing up to 32 member-links
- Physical layer and link layer configuration are performed on individual member links of a bundle.
- Configuration of network layer protocols and higher layer applications is performed on the bundle itself.
- IPv4 and IPv6 addressing is supported on ethernet link bundles.
- A bundle can be administratively enabled or disabled.
- Each individual link within a bundle can be administratively enabled or disabled.
- Ethernet link bundles are created in the same way as Ethernet channels, where the user enters the same configuration on both end systems.
- QoS is supported and is applied proportionally on each bundle member.
- In case static MAC address is configured on a bundle-ether interface, the following limitations are applied:
  - Locally generated packets, such as ICMP, BGP, and so on, going out from the interface have the source MAC address as the statically configured MAC address.
  - Transit (forwarded) packets going out of the interface do not have the configured static MAC as source MAC address. In such a scenario, the upper 36-bits come from the system MAC address (or the original/dynamic MAC address) and the lower 12-bits come from the MAC address configured on the bundle. To check the dynamic pool of MAC addresses included, use the `show ethernet mac-allocation detail` command.

    For example, if the dynamic MAC address was 008A.9624.48D8 and the configured static MAC address is 0011.2222.ABCD. Then, the source MAC for transit (forwarded) traffic will be 008A.9624.4BCD.

Note This limitation can cause traffic blackholing for the transit traffic, in case there is L2 ACL applied for security purpose. In such case, it is necessary to add permit statement for both MAC addresses in the L2 ACL.

- Load balancing (the distribution of data between member links) is done by flow instead of by packet. Data is distributed to a link in proportion to the bandwidth of the link in relation to its bundle.
- All links within a single bundle must terminate on the same two systems.
- Bundled interfaces are point-to-point.
- A link must be in the up state before it can be in distributing state in a bundle.
- Only physical links can be bundle members.
- Multicast traffic is load balanced over the members of a bundle. For a given flow, the internal processes selects the member link, and the traffic for the flow is sent over that member.

Information About Configuring Link Bundling

To configure link bundling, you must understand the following concepts:

IEEE 802.3ad Standard

The IEEE 802.3ad standard typically defines a method of forming Ethernet link bundles.

For each link configured as bundle member, the following information is exchanged between the systems that host each end of the link bundle:

- A globally unique local system identifier
- An identifier (operational key) for the bundle of which the link is a member
- An identifier (port ID) for the link
- The current aggregation status of the link

This information is used to form the link aggregation group identifier (LAG ID). Links that share a common LAG ID can be aggregated. Individual links have unique LAG IDs.

The system identifier distinguishes one router from another, and its uniqueness is guaranteed through the use of a MAC address from the system. The bundle and link identifiers have significance only to the router assigning them, which must guarantee that no two links have the same identifier, and that no two bundles have the same identifier.

The information from the peer system is combined with the information from the local system to determine the compatibility of the links configured to be members of a bundle.

The system assigns the MAC address of a Bundle-Ethernet interface from a chassis-wide MAC address pool. All member links use the bundle MAC address when passing bundle traffic. The system also sets any unicast or multicast addresses configured on the bundle on all member links.

Note The bundle MAC address operates independently of individual member links. System events, such as reloads, upgrades, or bundle membership changes, can modify this address. A change in the bundle MAC address may affect packet forwarding and can cause ARP/VRRP inconsistencies on downstream devices. This is especially critical in environments using LACP or port-channel interfaces.

Link Bundle Configuration Overview

The following steps provide a general overview of the link bundle configuration. Keep in mind that a link must be cleared of all previous network layer configuration before it can be added to a bundle:

1. In global configuration mode, create a link bundle. To create an Ethernet link bundle, enter the **interface Bundle-Ether** command.
2. Assign an IP address and subnet mask to the virtual interface using the **ipv4 address** command.
3. Add interfaces to the bundle you created in Step 1 with the **bundle id** command in the interface configuration submode.

4. You can optionally implement 1:1 link protection for the bundle by setting the **bundle maximum-active links** command to 1. Performing this configuration causes the highest-priority link in the bundle to become active and the second-highest-priority link to become the standby. (The link priority is based on the value of the **bundle port-priority** command.) If the active link fails, the standby link immediately becomes the active link.

Note A link is configured as a member of a bundle from the interface configuration submode for that link.

Link Switchover

By default, If one member link in a bundle fails, traffic is redirected to the remaining operational member links.

You can optionally implement 1:1 link protection for a bundle by setting the **bundle maximum-active links** command to 1. By doing so, you designate one active link and one or more dedicated standby links. If the active link fails, a switchover occurs and a standby link immediately becomes active, thereby ensuring uninterrupted traffic.

If the active and standby links are running LACP, you can choose between an IEEE standard-based switchover (the default) or a faster proprietary optimized switchover. If the active and standby links are not running LACP, the proprietary optimized switchover option is used.

Regardless of the type of switchover you are using, you can disable the wait-while timer, which expedites the state negotiations of the standby link and causes a faster switchover from a failed active link to the standby link.

Configuring Ethernet Link Bundles

This section describes how to configure an Ethernet link bundle.

Note In order for an Ethernet bundle to be active, you must perform the same configuration on both connection endpoints of the bundle.

Note When you use either physical Ethernet sub-interfaces or bundle Ethernet sub-interfaces, the device adds broadcast packets exiting a sub-interface to the output counters of the main interface. The output counters of the sub-interface do not increase. For example, when you send 100 broadcast packets through an egress physical or bundle sub-interface, the main interface output counters increase by 100, and the output broadcast packet counter of the sub-interface remains at zero.

Tip You can programmatically perform the configuration using `openconfig-if-aggregate.yang` OpenConfig data model. To get started with using data models, see the *Programmability Configuration Guide for Cisco NCS 540 Series Routers*.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **interface Bundle-Ether** *bundle-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface Bundle-Ether 3
```

Creates a new Ethernet link bundle with the specified bundle-id. The range is 1 to 65535.

Step 3 **ipv4 address** *ipv4-address mask*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ipv4 address 10.1.2.3 255.0.0.0
```

Assigns an IP address and subnet mask to the virtual interface using the **ipv4 address** configuration subcommand.

Note
- Only a Layer 3 bundle interface requires an IP address.

Step 4 **bundle minimum-active bandwidth** *kbps*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# bundle minimum-active bandwidth 580000
```

(Optional) Sets the minimum amount of bandwidth required before a user can bring up a bundle.

Step 5 **bundle minimum-active links** *links*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# bundle minimum-active links 2
```

(Optional) Sets the number of active links required before you can bring up a specific bundle.

Step 6 **bundle maximum-active links** *links* [**hot-standby**]

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# bundle maximum-active links 1 hot-standby
```

(Optional) Implements 1:1 link protection for the bundle, which causes the highest-priority link in the bundle to become active and the second-highest-priority link to become the standby. Also, specifies that a switchover between active and standby LACP-enabled links is implemented per a proprietary optimization.

The **bundle port-priority** command determines the priority of the active and standby links for the bundle.

Step 7 **exit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# exit
```

Exits interface configuration submode for the Ethernet link bundle.

Step 8 **interface TenGigE** interface-path-id

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface TenGigE 0/0/0/1
```

Enters interface configuration mode for the specified interface.

Enter the **TenGigE** keyword to specify the interface type. Replace the *interface-path-id* argument with the node-id in the *rack*/*slot*/*module* format.

Step 9 **bundle id** *bundle-id* [**mode** {**active** | **on** | **passive**}]

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# bundle id 3 mode on
```

Adds the link to the specified bundle.

To enable active or passive LACP on the bundle, include the optional **mode active** or **mode passive** keywords in the command string.

To add the link to the bundle without LACP support, include the optional **mode on** keywords with the command string.

Note
- If you do not specify the **mode** keyword, the default mode is **on (**LACP is not run over the port).

Step 10 **bundle port-priority** *priority*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# bundle port-priority 1
```

(Optional) If you set the **bundle maximum-active links** command to 1, you must also set the priority of the active link to the highest priority (lowest value) and the standby link to the second-highest priority (next lowest value). For example, you can set the priority of the active link to 1 and the standby link to 2.

Step 11 **no shutdown**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# no shutdown
```

(Optional) If a link is in the down state, bring it up. The **no shutdown** command returns the link to an up or down state depending on the configuration and state of the link.

Step 12 **exit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# exit
```

Exits interface configuration submode for the Ethernet interface.

Step 13 **bundle id** *bundle-id* [**mode** {**active** | **passive** | **on**}]

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface TenGigE 0/0/1/0

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# bundle id 3

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# bundle port-priority 2

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# no shutdown

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# exit

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface TenGigE 0/0/1/0

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# bundle id 3

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# no shutdown

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# exit
```

(Optional) Repeat Step 8 through Step 11 to add more links to the bundle.

Step 14 **exit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# exit
```

Exits interface configuration mode.

Step 15 **exit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# exit
```

Exits global configuration mode.

Step 16 Perform Step 1 through Step 15 on the remote end of the connection.

Brings up the other end of the link bundle.

Step 17 **show bundle Bundle-Ether** *bundle-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show bundle Bundle-Ether 3
```

(Optional) Shows information about the specified Ethernet link bundle.

Step 18 **show lacp Bundle-Ether** *bundle-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show lacp Bundle-Ether 3
```

(Optional) Shows detailed information about LACP ports and their peers.

VLANs on an Ethernet Link Bundle

802.1Q VLAN subinterfaces can be configured on 802.3ad Ethernet link bundles. Keep the following information in mind when adding VLANs on an Ethernet link bundle:

Note The memory requirement for bundle VLANs is slightly higher than standard physical interfaces.

To create a VLAN subinterface on a bundle, include the VLAN subinterface instance with the **interface Bundle-Ether** command, as follows:

interface Bundle-Ether *interface-bundle-id.subinterface*

After you create a VLAN on an Ethernet link bundle, all VLAN subinterface configuration is supported on that link bundle.

VLAN subinterfaces can support multiple Layer 2 frame types and services, such as Ethernet Flow Points - EFPs) and Layer 3 services.

Layer 2 EFPs are configured as follows:

```
interface bundle-ether instance.subinterface l2transport. encapsulation dot1q xxxxx
```

Layer 3 VLAN subinterfaces are configured as follows:

```
interface bundle-ether instance.subinterface, encapsulation dot1q xxxxx
```

Note The difference between the Layer 2 and Layer 3 interfaces is the **l2transport** keyword. Both types of interfaces use **dot1q encapsulation**.

Configuring VLAN over Bundles

This section describes how to configure a VLAN bundle. The creation of a VLAN bundle involves three main tasks:

Procedure

Step 1 Create an Ethernet bundle.

Step 2 Create VLAN subinterfaces and assign them to the Ethernet bundle.

Step 3 Assign Ethernet links to the Ethernet bundle.

These tasks are describe in detail in the procedure that follows.

Note In order for a VLAN bundle to be active, you must perform the same configuration on both ends of the bundle connection.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **interface Bundle-Ether** *bundle-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#(config)# interface Bundle-Ether 3
```

Creates and names a new Ethernet link bundle.

Step 3 **ipv4 address** *ipv4-address mask*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ipv4 address 10.1.2.3 255.0.0.0
```

Assigns an IP address and subnet mask to the virtual interface using the **ipv4 address** configuration subcommand.

Step 4 **bundle minimum-active bandwidth** *kbps*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# bundle minimum-active bandwidth 580000
```

(Optional) Sets the minimum amount of bandwidth required before a user can bring up a bundle.

Step 5 **bundle minimum-active links** *links*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# bundle minimum-active links 2
```

(Optional) Sets the number of active links required before you can bring up a specific bundle.

Step 6 **bundle maximum-active links** *links* [**hot-standby**]

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# bundle maximum-active links 1 hot-standby
```

(Optional) Implements 1:1 link protection for the bundle, which causes the highest-priority link in the bundle to become active and the second-highest-priority link to become the standby. Also, specifies that a switchover between active and standby LACP-enabled links is implemented per a proprietary optimization.

The **bundle port-priority** command determines the priority of the active and standby links for the bundle.

Step 7 **exit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# exit
```

Exits the interface configuration submode.

Step 8 **interface Bundle-Ether** *bundle-id.vlan-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#(config)# interface Bundle-Ether 3.1
```

Creates a new VLAN, and assigns the VLAN to the Ethernet bundle you created in Step 2.

Replace the *bundle-id* argument with the *bundle-id* you created in Step 2.

Replace the *vlan-id* with a subinterface identifier.

Range is from 1 to 4094 inclusive (0 and 4095 are reserved).

Note
When you include the .*vlan-id* argument with the **interface Bundle-Ether** *bundle-id* command, you enter subinterface configuration mode.

Step 9 **encapsulation dot1q***vlan-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-subif)# encapsulation dot1q 100
```

Sets the Layer 2 encapsulation of an interface.

Step 10 **ipv4 address** *ipv4-address mask*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#(config-subif)# ipv4 address 10.1.2.3/24
```

Assigns an IP address and subnet mask to the subinterface.

Step 11 **no shutdown**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#(config-subif)# no shutdown
```

(Optional) If a link is in the down state, bring it up. The **no shutdown** command returns the link to an up or down state depending on the configuration and state of the link.

Step 12 **exit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-subif)# exit
```

Exits subinterface configuration mode for the VLAN subinterface.

Step 13 Repeat Step 9 through Step 12 to add more VLANS to the bundle you created in Step 2.

(Optional) Adds more subinterfaces to the bundle.

Step 14 **end** or **commit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-subif)# end
```

or

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-subif)# commit
```

Saves configuration changes.

- When you issue the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes:

```
Uncommitted changes found, commit them before
exiting(yes/no/cancel)?
[cancel]:
```

- Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.

- Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.

- Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.

- Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Step 15 **exit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-subif)# end
```

Exits interface configuration mode.

Step 16 **exit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# exit
```

Exits global configuration mode.

Step 17 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router # configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 18 **interface** {**TenGigE** | **FortyGigE** | **HundredGigE**}*interface-path-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface TenGigE 0/0/0/0
```

Enters interface configuration mode for the Ethernet interface you want to add to the Bundle.

Enter the **GigabitEthernet** or **TenGigE** keyword to specify the interface type. Replace the *interface-path-id* argument with the node-id in the rack/slot/module format.

Note
A VLAN bundle is not active until you add an Ethernet interface on both ends of the link bundle.

LACP Short Period Time Intervals

As packets are exchanged across member links of a bundled interface, some member links may slow down or time-out and fail. LACP packets are exchanged periodically across these links to verify the stability and reliability of the links over which they pass. The configuration of short period time intervals, in which LACP packets are sent, enables faster detection and recovery from link failures.

Short period time intervals are configured as follows:

- In milliseconds
- In increments of 100 milliseconds
- In the range 100 to 1000 milliseconds
- The default is 1000 milliseconds (1 second)
-
- Up to 1280 packets per second (pps)

After 6missed packets, the link is detached from the bundle.

When the short period time interval is *not* configured, LACP packets are transmitted over a member link every 30 seconds by default.

When the short period time interval is configured, LACP packets are transmitted over a member link once every 1000 milliseconds (1 second) by default. Optionally, both the transmit and receive intervals can be configured to less than 1000 milliseconds, independently or together, in increments of 100 milliseconds (100, 200, 300, and so on).

When you configure a custom LACP short period *transmit* interval at one end of a link, you must configure the same time period for the *receive* interval at the other end of the link.

Note You must always configure the *transmit* interval at both ends of the connection before you configure the *receive* interval at either end of the connection. Failure to configure the *transmit* interval at both ends first results in route flapping (a route going up and down continuously). When you remove a custom LACP short period, you must do it in reverse order. You must remove the *receive* intervals first and then the *transmit* intervals.

Configuring the Default LACP Short Period Time Interval

This section describes how to configure the default short period time interval for sending and receiving LACP packets on a Gigabit Ethernet interface. This procedure also enables the LACP short period.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **interface HundredGigE***interface-path*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface HundredGigE 0/0/1/0
```

Creates a Gigabit Ethernet interface and enters interface configuration mode.

Step 3 **bundle id** *number* **mode active**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# bundle id 1 mode active
```

Specifies the bundle interface and puts the member interface in active mode.

Step 4 **lacp period short**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# lacp period short
```

Configures a short period time interval for the sending and receiving of LACP packets, using the default time period of 1000 milliseconds or 1 second.

Example

This example shows how to configure the LACP short period time interval to the default time of 1000 milliseconds (1 second):

```
config
interface HundredGigE 0/0/1/0
   bundle id 1 mode active
   lacp period short
   commit
```

The following example shows how to configure custom LACP short period transmit and receive intervals to *less than* the default of 1000 milliseconds (1 second):

```
config
interface HundredGigE 0/0/1/0
   bundle id 1 mode active
   lacp period short
   commit
```

```
config
interface HundredGigE 0/0/1/0
    lacp period short transmit 100
   commit
```

```
config
interface HundredGigE 0/0/1/0
   lacp period short receive 100
   commit
```

Configuring Custom LACP Short Period Time Intervals

This section describes how to configure custom short period time intervals (less than 1000 milliseconds) for sending and receiving LACP packets on a Gigabit Ethernet interface.

Note You must always configure the *transmit* interval at both ends of the connection before you configure the *receive* interval at either end of the connection. Failure to configure the *transmit* interval at both ends first results in route flapping (a route going up and down continuously). When you remove a custom LACP short period, you must do it in reverse order. You must remove the *receive* intervals first and then the *transmit* intervals.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **interface Bundle-Ether** *bundle-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface Bundle-Ether 3
```

Creates and names a new Ethernet link bundle.

Step 3 **ipv4 address** *ipv4-address mask*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ipv4 address 10.1.2.3 255.0.0.0
```

Assigns an IP address and subnet mask to the virtual interface using the **ipv4 address** configuration subcommand.

Step 4 **bundle minimum-active bandwidth** *kbps*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# bundle minimum-active bandwidth 580000
```

(Optional) Sets the minimum amount of bandwidth required before a user can bring up a bundle.

Step 5 **bundle minimum-active links** *links*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# bundle minimum-active links 2
```

(Optional) Sets the number of active links required before you can bring up a specific bundle.

Step 6 **bundle maximum-active links** *links*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# bundle maximum-active links 1
```

(Optional) Designates one active link and one link in standby mode that can take over immediately for a bundle if the active link fails (1:1 protection).

Note

- The default number of active links allowed in a single bundle is 8.
- If the **bundle maximum-active** command is issued, then only the highest-priority link within the bundle is active. The priority is based on the value from the **bundle port-priority** command, where a lower value is a higher priority. Therefore, we recommend that you configure a higher priority on the link that you want to be the active link.

Step 7 **exit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# exit
```

Exits the interface configuration submode.

Step 8 **interface Bundle-Ether** *bundle-id.vlan-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#(config)# interface Bundle-Ether 3.1
```

Creates a new VLAN, and assigns the VLAN to the Ethernet bundle you created in Step 2.

Replace the *bundle-id* argument with the *bundle-id* you created in Step 2.

Replace the *vlan-id* with a subinterface identifier. Range is from 1 to 4093 inclusive (0, 4094, and 4095 are reserved).

Note
- When you include the *vlan-id* argument with the **interface Bundle-Ether** *bundle-id* command, you enter subinterface configuration mode.

Step 9 **dot1q vlan** *vlan-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-subif)# dot1q vlan 10
```

Assigns a VLAN to the subinterface.

Replace the *vlan-id* argument with a subinterface identifier. Range is from 1 to 4093 inclusive (0, 4094, and 4095 are reserved).

Step 10 **ipv4 address** *ipv4-address mask*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-subif)# ipv4 address 10.1.2.3/24
```

Assigns an IP address and subnet mask to the subinterface.

Step 11 **no shutdown**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-subif)# no shutdown
```

(Optional) If a link is in the down state, bring it up. The **no shutdown** command returns the link to an up or down state depending on the configuration and state of the link.

Step 12 **exit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-subif)# exit
```

Exits subinterface configuration mode for the VLAN subinterface.

Step 13 Repeat Step 7 through Step 12 to add more VLANs to the bundle you created in Step 2.

(Optional) Adds more subinterfaces to the bundle.

Step 14 **exit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-subif)# exit
```

Exits interface configuration mode.

Step 15 **exit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# exit
```

Exits global configuration mode.

Step 16 **show ethernet trunk bundle-ether** *instance*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ethernet trunk bundle-ether 5
```

(Optional) Displays the interface configuration.

The Ethernet bundle instance range is from 1 through 65535.

Step 17 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router # configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 18 **interface** {**HundredGigE** } *interface-path-id*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface HundredGigE 0/0/1/0
```

Enters the interface configuration mode for the Ethernet interface you want to add to the Bundle.

Enter the **HundredGigE** keyword to specify the interface type. Replace the *interface-path-id* argument with the node-id in the rack/slot/module format.

Note

- A VLAN bundle is not active until you add an Ethernet interface on both ends of the link bundle.

Step 19 **bundle id** *bundle-id* [**mode** {**active** | **on** | **passive**}]

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# bundle-id 3
```

Adds an Ethernet interface to the bundle you configured in Step 2 through Step 13.

To enable active or passive LACP on the bundle, include the optional **mode active** or **mode passive** keywords in the command string.

To add the interface to the bundle without LACP support, include the optional **mode on** keywords with the command string.

Step 20 **no shutdown**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# no shutdown
```

(Optional) If a link is in the down state, bring it up. The **no shutdown** command returns the link to an up or down state depending on the configuration and state of the link.

Step 21 Repeat Step 19 through Step 21 to add more Ethernet interfaces to the VLAN bundle.

—

Step 22 Perform Step 1 through Step 23 on the remote end of the VLAN bundle connection.

Brings up the other end of the link bundle.

Step 23 **show bundle Bundle-Ether** *bundle-id* [**reasons**]

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show bundle Bundle-Ether 3 reasons
```

(Optional) Shows information about the specified Ethernet link bundle.

The **show bundle Bundle-Ether** command displays information about the specified bundle. If your bundle has been configured properly and is carrying traffic, the State field in the **show bundle Bundle-Ether** command output will show the number “4,” which means the specified VLAN bundle port is “distributing.”

Step 24 **show ethernet trunk bundle-ether** *instance*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ethernet trunk bundle-ether 5
```

(Optional) Displays the interface configuration.

The Ethernet bundle instance range is from 1 through 65535.

Bundle Consistency Checker

Table 8: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
Bundle Consistency Checker (BCC)	Release 7.3.1	From the running configuration, Bundle Consistency Checker (BCC) fetches information about the ingress/egress traffic from the bundle, sub-bundle, and active member nodes and saves it in the database. BCC also collects data from all the running nodes and then compares it with the information saved in the database. Any inconsistencies, programming errors, stale entries are reported.

In a scaled setup, a bundle programming check is difficult to perform and time consuming. Moreover, an issue is reported only when the user detects it, and not automatically. During multiple test executions, it isn't possible to detect the initial failure, which causes other subsequent failures. Bundle Consistency Checker (BCC) implements bundle programming and consistency check by using the following steps:

1. BCC uses the running configuration to detect discrepancies.
2. BCC forms a Bundle Consistency Checker Data Base (BCCDB) with the bundle, sub-bundle, or member information fetched from the running configuration.
3. BCC dumps the required data from all available nodes. It then uses BCCDB as a source to verify bundle programming and consistency in all other layer dumps.
4. BCC reports inconsistencies, programming errors, stale entries, and deletes any pending objects.

Supporting Interfaces

The following interfaces support BCC:

- Bundle
- Bundle sub-interface

The following table lists BCC behaviour during inconsistencies in bundle configuration or programming errors.

Case	BCC Behaviour
When no bundle is configured	Router# **show bundle consistency** Building configuration... Dumping Data..... Done Parsing Data..... Not Done BCC Stopped: Found 3 info/exceptions/errors Logs Preview: 2020-07-13 10:34:22,774: INFO: Bundlemgr PD dont have any bundle data 2020-07-13 10:34:22,832: INFO: BMPI dont have any bundle data 2020-07-13 10:34:23,728: INFO: No Bundle is configured/No member is added to Bundle Logs: /var/log/bcc_exception.log /var/log/bcc_debug.log
When a bundle is configured but no member is added	Router# **show bundle consistency** Building configuration... Dumping Data..... Done Parsing Data..... Not Done BCC Stopped: Found 4 info/exceptions/errors Logs Preview: 2020-07-13 10:36:32,513: INFO: Bundlemgr PD dont have any bundle data 2020-07-13 10:36:32,566: INFO: No member is added to bundle BE1(0x3c00400c) 2020-07-13 10:36:32,566: INFO: BMPI dont have any bundle data 2020-07-13 10:36:33,453: INFO: No Bundle is configured/No member is added to Bundle Logs: /var/log/bcc_exception.log /var/log/bcc_debug.log

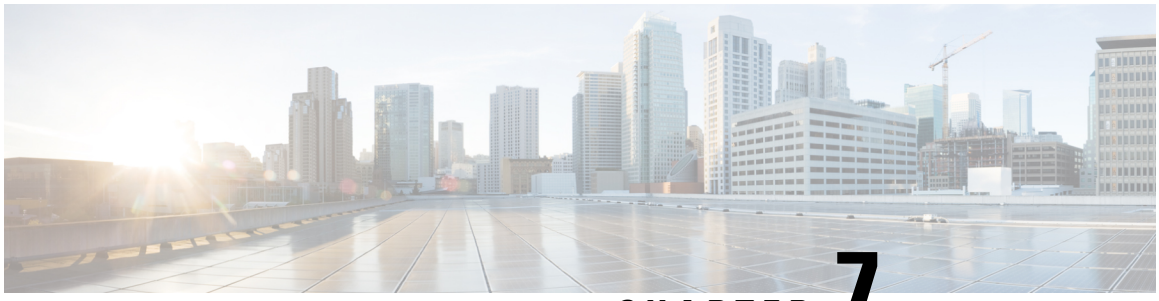
Case	BCC Behaviour

When a bundle is configured and members are added	`Router# show bundle consistency`
	`Building configuration...`
	`Dumping Data..... Done`
	`Parsing Data..... Done`
	`Bundle Consistency Check..... Done`
	`Bundle Programming Check..... Done`
	`Stale Entry Check..... Done`
	`Bundle Health Check..... Done`
	
	`Overall Results:`
	
	`Inconsistencies : 0 Stale Entries : 0`
	`BCM Programming Error : 0 Delete Pending DPA Objects : 0`
	`Info/Error/Python Exception : 0 Overall Bundle Health Status : WARNING`
	
	`Execute 'show bundle status' to see detailed reason for 'WARNING' in bundle health check`

Case	BCC Behaviour
When there is no encapsulation configuration for L2 or L3 sub-bundle or no member for L2 bundle	Router# **show bundle consistency** Building configuration... Dumping Data..... Done Parsing Data..... Done Bundle Consistency Check..... Done Bundle Programming Check..... Done Stale Entry Check..... Done Bundle Health Check..... Done Overall Results: Inconsistencies : 0 Stale Entries : 0 BCM Programming Error : 0 Delete Pending DPA Objects : 0 Info/Error/Python Exception : 3 Overall Bundle Health Status : WARNING Execute 'show bundle status' to see detailed reason for 'WARNING' in bundle health check Logs Preview: 2020-07-12 17:38:26,568: INFO: No member is added to bundle BE2(0x80042bc) ==> l2 bundle main 2020-07-12 17:38:32,573: interface Bundle-Ether1.1: Dont have any encapsulation config. ==> l3 sub 2020-07-12 17:38:32,574: interface Bundle-Ether1.130: Dont have any encapsulation config. ==> l2sub Logs: /var/log/bcc_inconsistencies.log /var/log/bcc_programming_error.log /var/log/bcc_stale_entries.log /var/log/bcc_delay_delete.log /var/log/bcc_bundle_health.log /var/log/bcc_exception.log /var/log/bcc_debug.log

Case	BCC Behaviour

During programming errors	`Router# show bundle consistency`
	
	`Building configuration...`
	`Dumping Data..... Done`
	`Parsing Data..... Done`
	`Bundle Consistency Check..... Done`
	`Bundle Programming Check..... Done`
	`Stale Entry Check..... Done`
	`Bundle Health Check..... Done`
	
	`Overall Results:`
	
	`Inconsistencies : 0 Stale Entries : 0`
	`BCM Programming Error : 1 Delete Pending DPA Objects : 0`
	`Info/Error/Python Exception : 0 Overall Bundle Health Status : WARNING`
	
	`Execute 'show bundle status' to see detailed reason for 'WARNING' in bundle health check`
	
	`Logs Preview:`
	
	`2020-07-12 18:48:22,658: Programming Error 1: BE1(0x80041ec) NPU 0,0/RP0/CPU0 Vlan Domain 0x33 != GigabitEthernet0_0_0_2 Vlan Domain 0xa`
	
	`Logs:`
	
	`/var/log/bcc_inconsistencies.log`
	`/var/log/bcc_programming_error.log`
	`/var/log/bcc_stale_entries.log`
	`/var/log/bcc_delay_delete.log`
	`/var/log/bcc_bundle_health.log`
	`/var/log/bcc_exception.log`
	`/var/log/bcc_debug.log`



CHAPTER 7

Configuring Traffic Mirroring

This module describes the configuration of the traffic mirroring feature. Traffic mirroring is sometimes called port mirroring, or switched port analyzer (SPAN). You can then pass this traffic to a destination port on the same router.

Feature Release History

Release	Modification
Release 6.1.3	ERSPAN Traffic to a Destination Tunnel in a Default VRF was introduced.
Release 7.5.3	ERSPAN Traffic to a Destination Tunnel in a Non-Default VRF was introduced.
Release 7.6.1	VLAN Sub-interface as Ingress or Egress Source for Traffic Mirroring was introduced.

- Introduction to Traffic Mirroring, on page 157
- SPAN Types, Supported Features, and Configurations, on page 162
- Troubleshoot Traffic Mirroring, on page 175

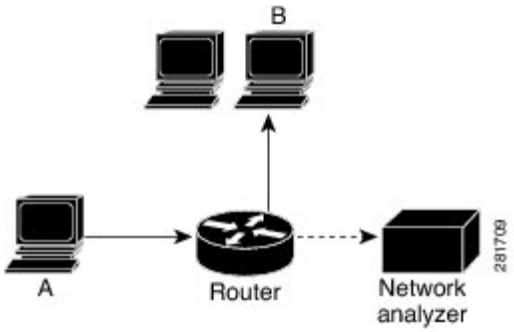
Introduction to Traffic Mirroring

Traffic mirroring, also referred to as Port mirroring or Switched Port Analyzer (SPAN), is a Cisco proprietary feature that enables you to monitor network traffic passing in or out of a set of ports on a router. You can then mirror this traffic to a remote destination or a destination port on the same router.

Traffic mirroring copies traffic from one or more source ports and sends the copied traffic to one or more destinations for analysis by a network analyzer or other monitoring devices. Traffic mirroring does not affect the flow of traffic on the source interfaces or sub-interfaces. It allows the mirrored traffic to be sent to a destination interface or sub-interface.

For example, you can attach a traffic or network analyzer to the router and capture the ethernet traffic that is sent by host A to host B.

Figure 16: Traffic Mirroring Operation



Traffic Mirroring Terminology

- Ingress Traffic — Traffic that comes into the router.
- Egress Traffic — Traffic that goes out of the router.
- Source port—A port that is monitored with the use of traffic mirroring. It is also called a monitored port.
- Destination port—A port that monitors source ports, usually where a network analyzer is connected. It is also called a monitoring port.
- Monitor session—A designation for a collection of SPAN configurations consisting of a single destination and, potentially, one or many source ports.

Traffic Mirroring Types

These are the supported traffic mirroring types.

- Local SPAN
- SPAN on Layer 2 Interfaces
- ACL-based SPAN
- ERSPAN

Characteristics of Source Port

A source port, also called a monitored port, is a routed port that you monitor for network traffic analysis. In a single traffic mirroring session, you can monitor source port traffic. The Cisco NCS540 Series routers support a maximum of up to 800 source ports.

A source port has these characteristics:

- It can be any data port type, such as Bundle Interface, 100 Gigabit Ethernet physical port, or 10 Gigabit Ethernet physical port.
- Each source port can be monitored in only one traffic mirroring session.
- When a port is used as a source port, the same port cannot be used as a destination port.

- Each source port can be configured with a direction (ingress, egress, or both) to monitor local traffic mirroring. Remote traffic mirroring is supported both in the ingress and egress directions. For bundles, the monitored direction applies to all physical ports in the group.

Characteristics of Monitor Session

A monitor session is a collection of traffic mirroring configurations consisting of a single destination and, potentially, many source interfaces. For any given monitor session, the traffic from the source interfaces (called *source ports*) is sent to the monitoring port or destination port. If there are more than one source port in a monitoring session, the traffic from the several mirrored traffic streams is combined at the destination port. The result is that the traffic that comes out of the destination port is a combination of the traffic from one or more source ports.

Monitor sessions have these characteristics:

- A single monitor session can have only one destination port.
- A single destination port can belong to only one monitor session.
- A monitor session can have a maximum of 800 source ports. This maximum limit is applicable only when the maximum number of source ports from all monitoring sessions does not exceed 800.

Characteristics of Destination Port

Each session must have a destination port or file that receives a copy of the traffic from the source ports.

A destination port has these characteristics:

- A destination port cannot be a source port.
- For local traffic mirroring, a destination port must reside on the same router as the source port.
- For remote mirroring, the destination is always a GRE tunnel.
- A destination port for local mirroring can be any Ethernet physical port, EFP, GRE tunnel interface, or bundle interface. It can be a Layer 2 or Layer 3 transport interface.
- A destination port on router cannot be a VLAN subinterface.
- At any time, a destination port can participate in only one traffic mirroring session. A destination port in one traffic mirroring session cannot be a destination port for a second traffic mirroring session. In other words, no two monitor sessions can have the same destination port.

Supported Scale

Restrictions

Generic Restrictions

The following are the generic restrictions related to traffic mirroring:

- Partial mirroring and sampled mirroring are not supported.

- From Release 7.6.1, sub-interface configured as source interface is supported on SPAN.
- The destination bundle interfaces flap when:
  - both the mirror source and destination are bundle interfaces in the Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP) mode.
  - mirror packets next-hop is a router or a switch instead of a traffic analyzer.

  This behavior is observed due to a mismatch of LACP packets on the next-hop bundle interface due to the mirroring of LACP packets on the source bundle interface.
- Subinterface with only one VLAN is supported as source for traffic mirroring.
- Bridge group virtual interfaces (BVIs) are not supported as source ports or destination ports.
- Bundle members cannot be used as destination ports.
- Fragmentation of mirror copies is not handled by SPAN when SPAN destination MTU is less than the packet size. Existing behaviour if the MTU of destination interface is less than the packet size is as below:

Platforms	Rx SPAN	Tx SPAN
NCS 540	Mirror copies are not fragmented. Receives whole packets as mirror copies.	Mirror copies are fragmented.

  You can configure the SPAN destination with an MTU which is greater than the packet size.
- Until Cisco IOS XR Software Release 7.6.1, SPAN only supports port-level source interfaces.
- SPAN counters are not supported.
- SPAN functionality is not supported in NC57 line cards in compatibility mode.

Restrictions on VLAN Sub-interface as Source

From Cisco IOS XR Release 7.6.1, NCS 540 routers support a maximum of 4 VLAN source interface at system level.

Restrictions on ACL-based SPAN

The following restrictions apply to SPAN-ACL:

Table 9: SPAN-ACL Support

Platforms	Rx Direction	Tx Direction
NCS 540	Supported at the port level, that is, in the ingress direction for IPv4 or IPv6 ACLs.	Not supported.

- MPLS traffic cannot be captured with SPAN-ACL.
  - ACL for any MPLS traffic is not supported.

- Traffic mirroring counters are not supported.
- ACL-based traffic mirroring is not supported with Layer 2 (ethernet-services) ACLs.
- Main interface as span source interface and ACL with the **capture** keyword on same main interface's sub-interface are not supported.
- If a SPAN session with the **acl** keyword is applied on an interface with no ACL rule attached to that interface, SPAN happens without any filtering.
- Configure one or more ACLs on the source interface to avoid default mirroring of traffic. If a Bundle interface is a source interface, configure the ACL on the bundle interface (not bundle members). Also, ensure that the ACL configured is a UDK (with capture field) and of the same protocol type and direction as the SPAN configuration. For example, if you configure SPAN with ACL for IPv4 or IPv6, configure an ingress IPv4 UDK (with capture) or IPv6 UDK (with capture) on that network processing unit respectively.
- Configure one or more ACLs on the source interface or any interface on the same network processing unit as the source interface, to avoid default mirroring of traffic. If a Bundle interface is a source interface, configure the ACL on any interface on the same network processing unit as all active bundle-members. Bundle members can be on multiple NPUs. Also, ensure that the ACLs configured are of the same protocol type and direction as the SPAN configuration. For example, if you configure SPAN with ACL for IPv4 or IPv6, configure an ingress IPv4 or IPv6 ACL on that network processing unit respectively.

Restrictions on ERSPAN

This section provides the restrictions that apply to ERSPAN and multiple ERSPAN sessions.

The following restrictions apply to ERSPAN:

- ERSPAN next-hop must have ARP resolved.
- ERSPAN packets with outgoing interface having MPLS encapsulation are not supported. The next-hop router or any router in the path can encapsulate in MPLS.
    - Additional routers may encapsulate in MPLS.
- ERSPAN sessions can be created only on physical interfaces. The sessions cannot be created on sub-interfaces.
- ERSPAN tunnel statistics is not supported.
- ERSPAN decapsulation is not supported.
- ERSPAN does not work if the GRE next hop is reachable over sub-interface. For ERSPAN to work, the next hop must be reachable over the main interface.
- ERSPAN decapsulation is not supported. Tunnel destination should be network analyzer.
- ERSPAN is not supported when the **hw-module profile segment-routing srv6 mode micro-segment format f3216** configuration is enabled.

SPAN Types, Supported Features, and Configurations

Local SPAN

This is the most basic form of traffic mirroring. The network analyzer or sniffer is attached directly to the destination interface. In other words, all monitored ports are located on the same router as the destination port.

SPAN on Subinterfaces

SPAN can be configured on up to six subinterfaces (either physical subinterfaces or bundle subinterfaces) associated with a single physical interface.

VLAN Subinterface as Ingress or Egress Source for Traffic Mirroring

Table 10: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
VLAN Subinterface as Ingress or Egress Source for Traffic Mirroring	Release 7.6.1	You can now configure the VLAN subinterface as an egress or ingress source for traffic mirroring. This feature enables the monitoring of traffic mirrored on either egress or ingress or both directions. You could configure mirror functionality only at the main interface level in earlier releases.

VLAN subinterface provides the flexibility to monitor ingress or egress, or both ingress/egress traffic from all the active subinterfaces of the source VLAN. The active subinterfaces in the source VLAN are considered as source subinterfaces. When subinterfaces are added or removed from the source VLAN, the corresponding traffic is added or removed from the monitoring sources.

VLAN Subinterface as Ingress Source for Traffic Mirroring

Configuration Example

```
Router# configure
Router(config)# monitor-session mon1 ethernet
Router(config-mon)# destination interface tunnel-ip 3
Router(config-mon)# exit
Router(config)# interface HundredGigE 0/1/0/1.10
Router(config-subif)#
Router(config-if-mon)# commit
```

Running Configuration

```
Router# show run monitor-session mon1
monitor-session mon1 ethernet
 destination interface tunnel-ip3
!
```

```
Router# show run interface HundredGigE 0/1/0/1.10
 interface HundredGigE0/1/0/1.10
  encapsulation dot1q 10
   ipv4 address 101.1.2.1 255.255.255.252
    monitor-session mon1 ethernet
    !
   !
  !
```

Verification

Verify that the status for VLAN subinterface is in the operational state for the incoming (Rx) traffic by using the **show monitor-session status command**:

```
Router# show monitor-session status
Monitor-session mon1
Destination interface tunnel-ip3
================================================================================
Source Interface Dir Status
---------------------- ---- -----------------------------------------------------
HundredGigE 0/1/0/1.10  Both Operational
```

VLAN Interface as Egress Source for Traffic Mirroring

Configuration Example

```
Router(config)# interface HundredGigE 0/1/0/1.10
Router(config-subif)#
Router(config-if-mon)# commit
```

Running Configuration

```
Router# show run monitor-session mon1
monitor-session mon1 ethernet
 destination interface tunnel-ip3
!


Router# show run interface HundredGigE 0/1/0/1.10
interface HundredGigE0/1/0/1.10
 encapsulation dot1q 20
  ipv4 address 102.1.2.1 255.255.255.252
   monitor-session mon1 ethernet
   !
  !
 !
```

Verification

Verify that the status for VLAN subinterface is in the operational state for the outgoing (Tx) traffic by using the **show monitor-session status command**:

```
Router# show monitor-session status
Monitor-session mon1
Destination interface tunnel-ip3
================================================================================
Source Interface Dir Status
---------------------- ---- -----------------------------------------------------
HundredGigE 0/1/0/1.10  Both Operational
```

Monitoring Traffic Mirroring on a Layer 2 Interface

This section describes the configuration for monitoring traffic on a Layer 2 interface.

Configuration

To monitor traffic mirroring on a Layer 2 interface, configure the monitor under `l2transport` sub-config of the interface:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface TenGigE0/0/0/42
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# l2transport
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if-l2)# monitor-session EASTON ethernet port-level
```

Verification

Verify that the status for traffic mirroring on a Layer 2 interface is in the operational state by using the **show monitor-session status command**:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show monitor-session status
Thu Aug 29 21:42:22.829 UTC
Monitor-session EASTON
Destination interface TenGigE0/0/0/20
=============================================
Source Interface      Dir   Status
--------------------- ----  -----------------
Te0/0/0/42 (port)     Both  Operational
```

ACL-based SPAN

Traffic is mirrored based on the configuration of the interface ACL.

You can mirror traffic based on the definition of an interface access control list. When you mirror Layer 3 traffic, the ACL is configured using the **ipv4 access-list** or the **ipv6 access-list** command with the **capture** option. The **permit** and **deny** commands determine if the packets in the traffic are permitted or denied. The **capture** option designates the packet is to be mirrored to the destination port, and it is supported only on permit type of Access Control Entries (ACEs).

Note

- Prior to Release 6.5.1, ACL-based traffic mirroring required the use of UDK (User-Defined TCAM Key) with the **enable-capture** option so that the **capture** option can be configured in the ACL.
- ACL must be defined before attaching the ACL name to SPAN source interface.

Configuring Security ACLs for Traffic Mirroring

This section describes the configuration for creating security ACLs for traffic mirroring.

In ACL-based traffic mirroring, traffic is mirrored based on the configuration of the interface ACL. You can mirror traffic based on the definition of an interface access control list. When you're mirroring Layer 3 or Layer 2 traffic, the ACL is configured using the **ipv4 access-list** or the **ipv6 access-list** command with the **capture** option. The **permit** and **deny** commands determine the behavior of the regular traffic.

Configure an IPv4 ACL for Traffic Mirroring

Use the following steps to configure ACLs for traffic mirroring.

```
/* Create an IPv4 ACL (TM-ACL) for traffic mirroring */
Router(config)# ipv4 access-list TM-ACL
Router(config-ipv4-acl)# 10 permit udp 10.1.1.0 0.0.0.255 eq 10 any capture
Router(config-ipv4-acl)# 20 permit udp 10.1.1.0 0.0.0.255 eq 20 any
Router(config-ipv4-acl)# exit
Router(config)# commit

/* Validate the configuration */
Router(config)# show run
Thu May 17 11:17:49.968 IST
Building configuration...
!! IOS XR Configuration 0.0.0
!! Last configuration change at Thu May 17 11:17:47 2018 by user
…
ipv4 access-list TM-ACL
 10 permit udp 10.1.1.0 0.0.0.255 eq 10 any capture
 20 permit udp 10.1.1.0 0.0.0.255 eq 20 any
!
…
```

You have successfully configured an IPv4 ACL for traffic mirroring.

Configuring UDF-Based Security ACL for Traffic Mirroring

Before you begin

This section describes the configuration steps for UDF-based security ACLs for traffic mirroring.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **udf** *udf-name* **header** {**inner | outer**} {**l2 | l3 | l4**} **offset** *offset-in-bytes* **length** *length-in-bytes*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# udf udf3 header outer l4 offset 0 length 1
(config-mon)#
```

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# udf udf3 header inner l4 offset 10 length 2
(config-mon)#
```

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# udf udf3 header outer l4 offset 50 length 1
(config-mon)#
```

Configures individual UDF definitions. You can specify the name of the UDF, the networking header from which offset, and the length of data to be extracted.

The **inner** or **outer** keywords indicate the start of the offset from the unencapsulated Layer 3 or Layer 4 headers, or if there is an encapsulated packet, they indicate the start of offset from the inner L3/L4.

Note
The maximum offset allowed, from the start of any header, is 63 bytes

The **length** keyword specifies, in bytes, the length from the offset. The range is from 1 to 4.

Step 3 **ipv4 access-list** *acl-name*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config))# ipv4 access-list acl1
```

Creates ACL and enters IP ACL configuration mode. The length of the *acl-name* argument can be up to 64 characters.

Step 4 **permit** *regular-ace-match-criteria* **udf** *udf-name1 value1 ... udf-name8 value8*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-ipv4-acl)# 10 permit ipv4 any any udf udf1 0x1234 0xffff udf3
0x56 0xff capture
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-ipv4-acl)# 30 permit ipv4 any any dscp af11 udf udf5 0x22 0x22
 capture
```

Configures ACL with UDF match.

Step 5 **exit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-ipv4-acl)# exit
```

Exits IP ACL configuration mode and returns to global configuration mode.

Step 6 **interface***type number*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface HundredGigE 0/0/1/0
```

Configures interface and enters interface configuration mode.

Step 7 **ipv4 access-group** *acl-name* **ingress**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ipv4 access-group acl1 ingress
```

Applies access list to an interface.

Step 8 **commit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# commit
```

Applies access list to an interface.

Verifying UDF-based Security ACL

Use the **show monitor-session status detail** command to verify the configuration of UDF on security ACL.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:leaf1# show monitor-session 1 status detail

Fri May 12 19:40:39.429 UTC
Monitor-session 1
  Destination interface tunnel-ip3
  Source Interfaces
  -----------------
  TenGigE0/0/0/15
    Direction:  Rx-only
    Port level: True
    ACL match:  Enabled
    Portion:    Full packet
    Interval:   Mirror all packets
    Status:     Not operational (destination not active)
```

Attaching the Configurable Source Interface

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **interface** *type number*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface HundredGigE 0/0/1/0
```

Enters interface configuration mode for the specified source interface. The interface number is entered in *rack*/*slot*/*module*/*port* notation. For more information about the syntax for the router, use the question mark (?) online help function.

Step 3 **ipv4 access-group** *acl-name* {**ingress** | **egress**}

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ipv4 access-group acl1 ingress
```

Controls access to an interface.

Step 4 **monitor-session** *session-name* **ethernet direction rx-onlyport-level acl**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# monitor-session mon1 ethernet direction rx-only port-level
 acl
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if-mon)#
```

Attaches a monitor session to the source interface and enters monitor session configuration mode.

Note
rx-only specifies that only ingress traffic is replicated.

Step 5 **acl**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if-mon)# acl
```

Specifies that the traffic mirrored is according to the defined ACL.

Note
If an ACL is configured by name, then this step overrides any ACL that may be configured on the interface.

Step 6 **exit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if-mon)# exit
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)#
```

Exits monitor session configuration mode and returns to interface configuration mode.

Step 7 **end** or **commit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# end
```

or

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# commit
```

Saves configuration changes.

- When you issue the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes:

  ```
  Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting (yes/no/cancel)?
  [cancel]:
  ```

  - Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.

  - Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.

  - Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.

- Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Step 8 **show monitor-session [session-name] status** [**detail**] [**error**]

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show monitor-session status
```

Displays information about the monitor session.

ERSPAN

Encapsulated Remote Switched Port Analyzer (ERSPAN) transports mirrored traffic over an IP network. The traffic is encapsulated at the source router and is transferred across the network. The packet is decapsulated at the destination router and then sent to the destination interface.

Encapsulated Remote SPAN (ERSPAN) enables generic routing encapsulation (GRE) for all captured traffic and allows it to be extended across Layer 3 domains.

ERSPAN involves mirroring traffic through a GRE tunnel to a remote site. For more information on configuring the GRE tunnel that is used as the destination for the monitor sessions, see the chapter *Configuring GRE Tunnels*.

Note A copy of every packet includes the Layer 2 header if the ethernet keyword is configured. As this renders the mirrored packets unroutable, the end point of the GRE tunnel must be the network analyzer.

Introduction to ERSPAN Egress Rate Limit

With ERSPAN egress rate limit feature, you can monitor traffic flow through any IP network. This includes third-party switches and routers.

ERSAPN operates in the following modes:

- ERSPAN Source Session – box where the traffic originates (is SPANned).
- ERSPAN Termination Session or Destination Session – box where the traffic is analyzed.

This feature provides rate limiting of the mirroring traffic or the egress traffic. With rate limiting, you can limit the amount of egress traffic to a specific rate, which prevents the network and remote ERSPAN destination traffic overloading. Be informed, if the egress rate-limit exceeds then the system may cap or drop the monitored traffic.

You can configure the QoS parameters on the traffic monitor session.

- Traffic Class (0 through 7)
  - Traffic class 0 has the lowest priority and 7 the highest.
  - The default traffic class is the same as that of the original traffic class.

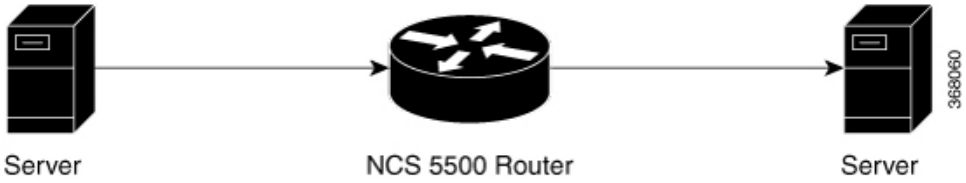
- The Discard Class (0 through 2):
  - The default is 0.
  - The discard class configuration is used in WRED.

Benefits

With ERSPAN Egress rate limit feature, you can limit the egress traffic or the mirrored and use the mirrored traffic for data analysis.

Topology

Figure 17: Topology for ERSPAN Egress Rate Limit



The encapsulated packet for ERSPAN is in ARPA/IP format with GRE encapsulation. The system sends the GRE tunneled packet to the destination box identified by an IP address. At the destination box, SPAN-ASIC decodes this packet and sends out the packets through a port. ERSPAN egress rate limit feature is applied on the router egress interface to rate limit the monitored traffic.

The intermediate switches carrying ERSPAN traffic from source session to termination session can belong to any L3 network.

Configure ERSPAN Egress Rate Limit

Use the following steps to configure ERSPAN egress rate limit:

```
monitor-session ERSPAN ethernet
destination interface tunnel-ip1
!

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:pyke-008#sh run int tunnel-ip 1

interface tunnel-ip1
ipv4 address 4.4.4.1 255.255.255.0
tunnel mode gre ipv4
tunnel source 20.1.1.1
tunnel destination 20.1.1.2
!

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:pyke-008#sh run int hundredGigE 0/0/0/16

interface HundredGigE0/0/0/16
ipv4 address 215.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
ipv6 address 3001::2/64
monitor-session ERSPAN ethernet direction rx-only port-level
  acl
!
ipv4 access-group ACL6 ingress
```

Running Configuration

```
!! Policy-map to be used with the ERSPAN Destination (egress interface)
!! Traffic class is set to 5. For packets in this class, apply shaping
!! as well as WRED.
class-map match-any TC5
 match traffic-class 5
 end-class-map
!
policy-map shape-foo
 class TC5
  random-detect discard-class 0 10000 bytes 40000 bytes
  random-detect discard-class 1 40000 bytes 80000 bytes
  random-detect discard-class 2 80000 bytes 200000 bytes
  shape average percent 15
 !
 class class-default
 !
 end-policy-map
!
!!GRE Tunnel Interface
interface Loopback49
 ipv4 address 49.49.49.49 255.255.255.255
!
interface tunnel-ip100
 ipv4 address 130.100.1.1 255.255.255.0
 tunnel mode gre ipv4
 tunnel source 49.49.49.49
 tunnel destination 10.8.1.2
!
!!ERSPAN Monitor Session with GRE tunnel as the Destination Interface, and with QoS
configuration
monitor-session FOO ethernet
 destination interface tunnel-ip100
 traffic-class 5
 discard-class 1
!
!!ERSPAN Source Interface
interface TenGigE0/6/0/4/0
 description connected to TGEN 9/5
 ipv4 address 10.4.90.1 255.255.255.0
 monitor-session FOO ethernet port-level
 !
!
!!ERSPAN Destination ip-tunnel00's underlying interface, with egress policy-map shape-foo
attached
interface TenGigE0/6/0/9/0
 service-policy output shape-foo
 ipv4 address 10.8.1.1 255.255.255.0
```

Verification

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios#show monitor-session FOO status detail
Wed May  2 15:14:05.762 UTC
Monitor-session FOO
  Destination interface tunnel-ip100
  Source Interfaces
  -----------------
  TenGigE0/6/0/4/0
    Direction:  Both
    Port level: True
    ACL match:  Disabled
    Portion:    Full packet
    Interval:   Mirror all packets
```

```
    Status:     Operational
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios#
show monitor-session <sess-id> status internal

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios#show monitor-session FOO status internal
Wed May  2 15:13:06.063 UTC
Information from SPAN Manager and MA on all nodes:
Monitor-session FOO (ID 0x00000001) (Ethernet)
SPAN Mgr: Destination interface tunnel-ip100 (0x0800001c)
          Last error: Success
          Tunnel data:
            Mode: GREoIPv4
            Source IP: 49.49.49.49
            Dest IP: 10.8.1.2
            VRF:
            ToS: 0 (copied)
            TTL: 255
            DFbit: Not set
0/6/CPU0: Destination interface tunnel-ip100 (0x0800001c)
          Tunnel data:
            Mode: GREoIPv4
            Source IP: 49.49.49.49
            Dest IP: 10.8.1.2
            VRF:
            ToS: 0 (copied)
            TTL: 255
            DFbit: Not set

Information from SPAN EA on all nodes:
Monitor-session 0x00000001 (Ethernet)
0/6/CPU0: Name 'FOO', destination interface tunnel-ip100 (0x0800001c)
Platform, 0/6/CPU0:

  Dest Port: 0xe7d

  ERSPAN Encap:
    Tunnel ID: 0x4001380b
    ERSPAN Tunnel ID: 0x4001380c
    IP-NH Grp key: 0x3140000cc5
    IP-NH hdl: 0x308a5fa5e0
    IP-NH IFH: 0x30002a0
    IP-NH IPAddr: 10.4.91.2

  NPU   MirrorRx     MirrorTx
  00    0x00000003   0x00000004
  01    0x00000003   0x00000004
  02    0x00000003   0x00000004
  03    0x00000003   0x00000004
  04    0x00000003   0x00000004
  05    0x00000003   0x00000004
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:ios#
```

ERSPAN Traffic to a Destination Tunnel in a Default VRF

Table 11: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
ERSPAN Traffic to a Destination Tunnel in a Default VRF	Release 6.1.3	Encapsulated Remote Switched Port Analyzer (ERSPAN) now transports mirrored traffic through GRE tunnels that belongs to the default VRF thus ensuring a network design with a single Layer 3 device. This feature enables the tunnels to be grouped under the default VRF domain towards which you can segregate the traffic.

Running Configuration

The following example shows a tunnel interface configured with endpoints in a default VRF (**vrf: green**):

```
Router#show run int tunnel-ip 2
Thu Feb  3 06:18:28.075 UTC
interface tunnel-ip2
 ipv4 address 102.1.1.100 255.255.255.0
 tunnel tos 32
 tunnel mode gre ipv4
 tunnel source 120.1.1.100
 tunnel vrf green
 tunnel destination 120.1.1.1
```

```
Router#show monitor-session status
Thu Feb  3 06:18:11.061 UTC
Monitor-session ERSPAN-2
Destination interface tunnel-ip2
================================================================
Source Interface      Dir   Status
--------------------- ----  ------------------------------------------------------
Te0/0/0/5 (port)      Rx    Operational
```

Verification

The following CLI output shows how to verify the default VRF configuration:

```
Router#show monitor-session ERSPAN-2 status internal
Thu Feb  3 06:19:50.014 UTC

Information from SPAN Manager and MA on all nodes:
Monitor-session ERSPAN-2 (ID 0x00000003) (Ethernet)
SPAN Mgr: Destination interface tunnel-ip2 (0x20008024)
          Last error: Success
          Tunnel data:
            Mode: GREoIPv4
            Source IP: 120.1.1.100
            Dest IP: 120.1.1.1
            VRF: green
            VRF TBL ID: 0
```

```
ToS: 32
TTL: 255
DFbit: Not set
```

ERSPAN Traffic to a Destination Tunnel in a Non-Default VRF

Table 12: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Description
ERSPAN Traffic to a Destination Tunnel in a Non-Default VRF	Release 7.5.3	The tunnels are grouped under the VRFs and you can segregate the traffic towards a specific VRF domain. Encapsulated Remote Switched Port Analyzer (ERSPAN) now transports mirrored traffic through GRE tunnels with multiple VRFs, helping you design your network with multiple Layer 3 partitions. In earlier releases, ERSPAN transported mirrored traffic through GRE tunnels that belonged to only default VRF.

Here, the tunnel interface, where the traffic mirroring is destined, is now in a VRF.

The traffic coming out of the interfaces of a router do not have any grouping. By configuring a specific VRF, you can now identify the incoming traffic group.

Configuration

Use the following command to configure a specific VRF:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface tunnel-ip 2
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# tunnel vrf red
```

For more information on enabling the tunnel mode in GRE, see Configuring GRE Tunnels.

Configuration example

The following example shows a tunnel interface configured with endpoints in a non-default VRF (**vrf: red**):

```
Router#show run int tunnel-ip 2
Thu Feb  3 06:18:28.075 UTC
interface tunnel-ip2
 ipv4 address 102.1.1.100 255.255.255.0
 tunnel tos 32
 tunnel mode gre ipv4
 tunnel source 120.1.1.100
 tunnel vrf red
 tunnel destination 120.1.1.1
```

```
Router#show monitor-session status
Thu Feb  3 06:18:11.061 UTC
Monitor-session ERSPAN-2
```

```
Destination interface tunnel-ip2
================================================================
Source Interface      Dir   Status
--------------------- ----  -------------------------------------------------
Te0/0/0/5 (port)      Rx    Operational
```

Verification

The following CLI output shows how to verify, if the configured tunnel VRF is programmed in the session:

```
Router#show monitor-session ERSPAN-2 status internal
Thu Feb  3 06:19:50.014 UTC

Information from SPAN Manager and MA on all nodes:
Monitor-session ERSPAN-2 (ID 0x00000003) (Ethernet)
SPAN Mgr: Destination interface tunnel-ip2 (0x20008024)
          Last error: Success
          Tunnel data:
            Mode: GREoIPv4
            Source IP: 120.1.1.100
            Dest IP: 120.1.1.1
            VRF: red
            VRF TBL ID: 0
            ToS: 32
            TTL: 255
            DFbit: Not set
```

Troubleshoot Traffic Mirroring

When you encounter any issue with traffic mirroring, begin troubleshooting by checking the output of the **show monitor-session status** command. This command displays the recorded state of all sessions and source interfaces:

```
# show monitor-session status
Monitor-session 5
rx destination interface tunnel-ip5
tx destination is not specified
================================================================================
Source Interface  Dir  Status
--------------------- ---- -------------------------------------------------
Te0/0/0/23 (port) Rx   Operational
```

In the preceding example, the line marked as `<Session status>` can indicate one of these configuration errors:

Session Status	Explanation
Session is not configured globally	The session does not exist in global configuration. Review the command output and ensure that a session with a correct name configured.
Destination interface <intf> (<down-state>)	The destination interface is not in Up state in the Interface Mar can verify the state using the **show interfaces** command. Chec configuration to determine what might be keeping the interface fr up (for example, a sub-interface needs to have an appropriate enc configured).

The <Source interface status> can report these messages:

Source Interface Status	Explanation
Operational	Everything appears to be working correctly in traffic mirroring PI. follow up with the platform teams in the first instance, if mirroring operating as expected.
Not operational (Session is not configured globally)	The session does not exist in global configuration. Check the **show** command output to ensure that a session with the right name has b configured.
Not operational (destination not known)	The session exists, but it either does not have a destination interface s or the destination interface named for the session does not exist. For e if the destination is a sub-interface that has not been created.
Not operational (source same as destination)	The session exists, but the destination and source are the same inte traffic mirroring does not work.
Not operational (destination not active)	The destination interface is not in the Up state. See the corresponding *status* error messages for suggested resolution.
Not operational (source state <down-state>)	The source interface is not in the Up state. You can verify the state the **show interfaces** command. Check the configuration to see wha be keeping the interface from coming up (for example, a sub-interfa to have an appropriate encapsulation configured).
Error: see detailed output for explanation	Traffic mirroring has encountered an error. Run the **show monitor status detail** command to display more information.

The **show monitor-session status detail** command displays full details of the configuration parameters and any errors encountered. For example:

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router **show monitor-session status detail**

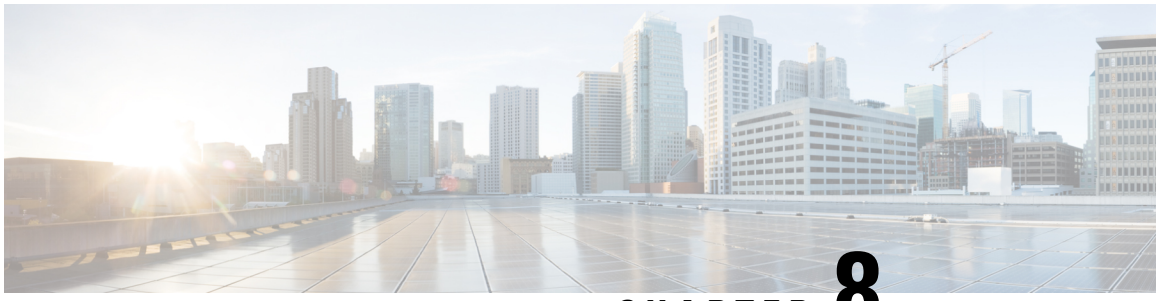
```
Monitor-session sess1
 Destination interface is not configured
 Source Interfaces
 -----------------
 TenGigE0/0/0/1
  Direction: Both
  ACL match: Disabled
  Portion:  Full packet
  Status:  Not operational (destination interface not known)
 TenGigE0/0/0/2
  Direction: Both
  ACL match: Disabled
  Portion:  First 100 bytes
  Status: Not operational (destination interface not known). Error: 'Viking SPAN PD' detected
 the 'warning' condition 'PRM connection
          creation failure'.
Monitor-session foo
 Destination next-hop TenGigE 0/0/0/0
 Source Interfaces
 -----------------
 TenGigE 0/0/0/1.100:
  Direction: Both
  Status:  Operating
```

```
 TenGigE 0/0/0/2.200:
  Direction: Tx
  Status:  Error: <blah>

Monitor session bar
 No destination configured
 Source Interfaces
 -----------------
 TenGigE 0/0/0/3.100:
  Direction: Rx
  Status:  Not operational(no destination)
```

Here are additional trace and debug commands:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show monitor-session trace ?

 platform  Enable platform trace
 process   Filter debug by process(cisco-support)

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show monitor-session trace platform ?

 errors  Display error traces(cisco-support)
 events  Display event traces(cisco-support)

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#show monitor-session trace platform events location all ?

usrtdir  Specify directory to collect unsorted traces(cisco-support)
|        Output Modifiers
<cr>

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#show monitor-session trace platform errors location all ?

usrtdir  Specify directory to collect unsorted traces(cisco-support)
|        Output Modifiers
<cr>

#


RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# debug monitor-session process all

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# debug monitor-session process ea

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# debug monitor-session process ma

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show monitor-session process mgr

 detail  Display detailed output
 errors  Display only attachments which have errors
 internal Display internal monitor-session information
 |     Output Modifiers

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show monitor-session status

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show monitor-session status errors

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show monitor-session status internal

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show tech-support span ?

 file       Specify a valid file name (e.g. disk0:tmp.log)
```

```
list-CLIs  list the commands that would be run (don't execute)(cisco-support)
location   Specify a location(cisco-support)
rack       Specify a rack(cisco-support)
time-out   per show command timeout configuration(cisco-support)
<cr>
```



CHAPTER 8

Configuring Virtual Loopback and Null Interfaces

This module describes the configuration of loopback and null interfaces. Loopback and null interfaces are considered virtual interfaces.

A virtual interface represents a logical packet switching entity within the router. Virtual interfaces have a global scope and do not have an associated location. Virtual interfaces have instead a globally unique numerical ID after their names. Examples are Loopback 0, Loopback 1, and Loopback 99999. The ID is unique per virtual interface type to make the entire name string unique such that you can have both Loopback 0 and Null 0.

Loopback and null interfaces have their control plane presence on the active route switch processor (RSP). The configuration and control plane are mirrored onto the standby RSP and, in the event of a failover, the virtual interfaces move to the ex-standby, which then becomes the newly active RSP.

- Information About Configuring Virtual Interfaces, on page 179

Information About Configuring Virtual Interfaces

To configure virtual interfaces, you must understand the following concepts:

Virtual Loopback Interface Overview

A virtual loopback interface is a virtual interface with a single endpoint that is always up. Any packet transmitted over a virtual loopback interface is immediately received by the same interface. Loopback interfaces emulate a physical interface.

In Cisco IOS XR Software, virtual loopback interfaces perform these functions:

- Loopback interfaces can act as a termination address for routing protocol sessions. This allows routing protocol sessions to stay up even if the outbound interface is down.
- You can ping the loopback interface to verify that the router IP stack is working properly.

In applications where other routers or access servers attempt to reach a virtual loopback interface, you must configure a routing protocol to distribute the subnet assigned to the loopback address.

Packets routed to the loopback interface are rerouted back to the router or access server and processed locally. IP packets routed out to the loopback interface but not destined to the loopback interface are dropped. Under these two conditions, the loopback interface can behave like a null interface.

Prerequisites for Configuring Virtual Interfaces

You must be in a user group associated with a task group that includes the proper task IDs. The command reference guides include the task IDs required for each command. If you suspect user group assignment is preventing you from using a command, contact your AAA administrator for assistance.

Configuring Virtual Loopback Interfaces

This task explains how to configure a basic loopback interface.

Restrictions

The IP address of a loopback interface must be unique across all routers on the network. It must not be used by another interface on the router, and it must not be used by an interface on any other router on the network.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **interface loopback** *instance*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#(config)# interface Loopback 3
```

Enters interface configuration mode and names the new loopback interface.

Step 3 **ipv4 address** *ip-address*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ipv4 address 100.100.100.69 255.255.255.255
```

Assigns an IP address and subnet mask to the virtual loopback interface using the **ipv4 address** configuration command.

Step 4 **end** or **commit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# end
```

or

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# commit
```

Saves configuration changes.

- When you issue the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes:

```
Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)?
[cancel]:
```

- Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.
- Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.
- Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.
- Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Step 5 **show interfaces***type instance*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show interfaces Loopback0
```

(Optional) Displays the configuration of the loopback interface.

Example

This example shows how to configure a loopback interface:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface Loopback0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ipv4 address 100.100.100.69 255.255.255.255
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# ipv6 address 100::69/128
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-if)# end
Uncommitted changes found, commit them? [yes]: yes
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show interfaces Loopback0

Loopback0 is up, line protocol is up
  Interface state transitions: 1
  Hardware is Loopback interface(s)
  Internet address is 100.100.100.69/32
  MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit
     reliability Unknown, txload Unknown, rxload Unknown
  Encapsulation Loopback,  loopback not set,
  Last link flapped 01:57:47
  Last input Unknown, output Unknown
  Last clearing of "show interface" counters Unknown
  Input/output data rate is disabled.
```

Null Interface Overview

A null interface functions similarly to the null devices available on most operating systems. This interface is always up and can never forward or receive traffic; encapsulation always fails. The null interface provides an alternative method of filtering traffic. You can avoid the overhead involved with using access lists by directing undesired network traffic to the null interface.

The only interface configuration command that you can specify for the null interface is the **ipv4 unreachables** command. With the **ipv4 unreachables** command, if the software receives a non-broadcast packet destined for itself that uses a protocol it does not recognize, it sends an Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) protocol unreachable message to the source. If the software receives a datagram that it cannot deliver to its ultimate destination because it knows of no route to the destination address, it replies to the originator of that datagram with an ICMP host unreachable message. By default **ipv4 unreachables** command is enabled. If we do not want ICMP to send protocol unreachable, then we need to configure using the **ipv4 icmp unreachable disable** command.

The Null 0 interface is created by default during boot process and cannot be removed. The **ipv4 unreachables** command can be configured for this interface, but most configuration is unnecessary because this interface just discards all the packets sent to it.

The Null 0 interface can be displayed with the **show interfaces null0** command.

Configuring Null Interfaces

This task explains how to configure a basic null interface.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **interface null 0**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface null 0
```

Enters the null 0 interface configuration mode.

Step 3 **ipv4 icmp unreachables disable**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-null0)# ipv4 icmp unreachables disable
```

This command disables the generation of IPv4 Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) unreachable messages.

Step 4 **end** or **commit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-null0)# end
```

or

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-null0)# commit
```

Saves configuration changes.

- When you issue the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes:

```
Uncommitted changes found, commit them before
exiting(yes/no/cancel)?
[cancel]:
```

- Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.
- Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.
- Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.
- Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Step 5 **show interfaces null 0**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show interfaces null 0
```

Verifies the configuration of the null interface.

Example

This example shows how to configure a null interface:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface Null 0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-null0)# ipv4 icmp unreachables disable
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-null0)# end
Uncommitted changes found, commit them? [yes]: yes
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show interfaces Null 0

Null0 is up, line protocol is up
Interface state transitions: 1
Hardware is Null interface
Internet address is Unknown
MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit
reliability 255/255, txload Unknown, rxload Unknown
Encapsulation Null, loopback not set,
Last link flapped 4d20h
Last input never, output never
Last clearing of "show interface" counters 05:42:04
5 minute input rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
5 minute output rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
0 packets input, 0 bytes, 0 total input drops
0 drops for unrecognized upper-level protocol
Received 0 broadcast packets, 0 multicast packets
0 packets output, 0 bytes, 0 total output drops
Output 0 broadcast packets, 0 multicast packets
```

Configuring Virtual IPv4 Interfaces

This task explains how to configure an IPv4 virtual interface.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **ipv4 virtual address** *ipv4-*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ipv4 virtual address 10.3.32.154/8
```

Defines an IPv4 virtual address for the management Ethernet interface.

Note
While configuring the IPv4 virtual address, ensure that you match the IP address on the Management interface in the same network.

Step 3 **end** or **commit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-null0)# end
```

or

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-null0)# commit
```

Saves configuration changes.

- When you issue the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes:

```
Uncommitted changes found, commit them before
exiting(yes/no/cancel)?
[cancel]:
```

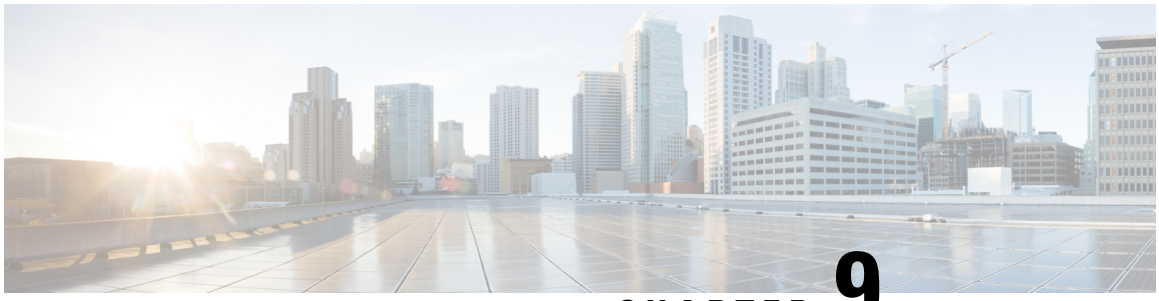
- Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.
- Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.
- Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.

- Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Example

This is an example for configuring a virtual IPv4 interface:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# ipv4 virtual address 10.3.32.154/8
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-null0)# commit
```



CHAPTER 9

Configuring 802.1Q VLAN Interfaces

A VLAN is a group of devices on one or more LANs that are configured so that they can communicate as if they were attached to the same wire, when in fact they are located on a number of different LAN segments. VLANs are very flexible for user and host management, bandwidth allocation, and resource optimization because they are based on logical grouping instead of physical connections.

The IEEE 802.1Q protocol standard addresses the problem of dividing large networks into smaller parts so broadcast and multicast traffic does not consume more bandwidth than necessary. The standard also helps provide a higher level of security between segments of internal networks.

802.1Q Tagged Frames

The IEEE 802.1Q tag-based VLAN uses an extra tag in the MAC header to identify the VLAN membership of a frame across bridges. This tag is used for VLAN and quality of service (QoS) priority identification. The VLAN ID associates a frame with a specific VLAN and provides the information that switches must process the frame across the network. A tagged frame is four bytes longer than an untagged frame and contains two bytes of Tag Protocol Identifier (TPID) residing within the type and length field of the Ethernet frame and two bytes of Tag Control Information (TCI) which starts after the source address field of the Ethernet frame.

- Configuring 802.1Q VLAN Interfaces, on page 187
- Information About Configuring 802.1Q VLAN Interfaces, on page 188
- How to Configure 802.1Q VLAN Interfaces, on page 189

Configuring 802.1Q VLAN Interfaces

A VLAN is a group of devices on one or more LANs that are configured so that they can communicate as if they were attached to the same wire, when in fact they are located on a number of different LAN segments. VLANs are very flexible for user and host management, bandwidth allocation, and resource optimization because they are based on logical grouping instead of physical connections.

The IEEE 802.1Q protocol standard addresses the problem of dividing large networks into smaller parts so broadcast and multicast traffic does not consume more bandwidth than necessary. The standard also helps provide a higher level of security between segments of internal networks.

802.1Q Tagged Frames

The IEEE 802.1Q tag-based VLAN uses an extra tag in the MAC header to identify the VLAN membership of a frame across bridges. This tag is used for VLAN and quality of service (QoS) priority identification. The VLAN ID associates a frame with a specific VLAN and provides the information that switches must process

the frame across the network. A tagged frame is four bytes longer than an untagged frame and contains two bytes of Tag Protocol Identifier (TPID) residing within the type and length field of the Ethernet frame and two bytes of Tag Control Information (TCI) which starts after the source address field of the Ethernet frame.

Information About Configuring 802.1Q VLAN Interfaces

To configure 802.1Q VLAN interfaces, you must understand these concepts:

Subinterfaces

Subinterfaces are logical interfaces created on a hardware interface. These software-defined interfaces allow for segregation of traffic into separate logical channels on a single hardware interface as well as allowing for better utilization of the available bandwidth on the physical or bundle interface.

Subinterfaces are distinguished from one another by adding an extension on the end of the interface name and designation. For instance, the Ethernet subinterface 23 on the physical interface designated TenGigE 0/0/0/0 would be indicated by TenGigE 0/0/0/0.23.

Before a subinterface is allowed to pass traffic it must have a valid tagging protocol encapsulation and VLAN identifier assigned. All Ethernet subinterfaces always default to the 802.1Q VLAN encapsulation. However, the VLAN identifier must be explicitly defined.

Subinterface MTU

The subinterface maximum transmission unit (MTU) is inherited from the physical interface with an additional four bytes allowed for the 802.1Q VLAN tag. By default subinterface inherits MTU of physical interface if the MTU is not configured. We can have maximum 3 different MTU for a subinterface per NPU. .

EFPs

An Ethernet Flow Point (EFP) is a Metro Ethernet Forum (MEF) term describing abstract router architecture. An EFP is implemented by an Layer 2 subinterface with a VLAN encapsulation. The term EFP is used synonymously with an VLAN tagged L2 subinterface. .

Layer 2 VPN on VLANs

The Layer 2 Virtual Private Network (L2VPN) feature enables Service Providers (SPs) to provide Layer 2 services to geographically disparate customer sites.

The configuration model for configuring VLAN attachment circuits (ACs) is similar to the model used for configuring basic VLANs, where the user first creates a VLAN subinterface, and then configures that VLAN in subinterface configuration mode. To create an AC, you need to include the **l2transport** keyword in the **interface** command string to specify that the interface is a Layer 2 interface.

VLAN ACs support these modes of L2VPN operation:

- Basic Dot1Q AC—The AC covers all frames that are received and sent with a specific VLAN tag.
- QinQ AC—The AC covers all frames received and sent with a specific outer VLAN tag and a specific inner VLAN tag. QinQ is an extension to Dot1Q that uses a stack of two tags.

Each VLAN on a CE-to-PE link can be configured as a separate L2VPN connection (using either VC type 4 or VC type 5).

How to Configure 802.1Q VLAN Interfaces

This section contains the following procedures:

Configuring 802.1Q VLAN Subinterfaces

This task explains how to configure 802.1Q VLAN subinterfaces. To remove these subinterfaces, see the "Removing an 802.1Q VLAN Subinterface" section.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **interface {TenGigE | FortyGigE | HundredGigE | Bundle-Ether}** *interface-path-id.subinterface*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# interface TenGigE 0/0/0/4.10
```

Enters subinterface configuration mode and specifies the interface type, location, and subinterface number.

- Replace the *interface-path-id* argument with one of the following instances:
- Physical Ethernet interface instance, or with an Ethernet bundle instance. Naming notation is *rack*/*slot*/*module*/*port*, and a slash between values is required as part of the notation.
- Ethernet bundle instance. Range is from 1 through 65535.
- Replace the *subinterface* argument with the subinterface value. Range is from 0 through 2147483647.
- Naming notation is *interface-path-id.subinterface*, and a period between arguments is required as part of the notation.

Step 3 **encapsulation dot1q**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-subif)# encapsulation dot1q 100
```

Sets the Layer 2 encapsulation of an interface.

Step 4 **ipv4 address** *ip-address mask*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-subif)# ipv4 address 178.18.169.23/24
```

Assigns an IP address and subnet mask to the subinterface.

- Replace *ip-address* with the primary IPv4 address for an interface.
- Replace *mask* with the mask for the associated IP subnet. The network mask can be specified in either of two ways:
- The network mask can be a four-part dotted decimal address. For example, 255.0.0.0 indicates that each bit equal to 1 means that the corresponding address bit belongs to the network address.
- The network mask can be indicated as a slash (/) and number. For example, /8 indicates that the first 8 bits of the mask are ones, and the corresponding bits of the address are network address.

Step 5 **exit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-subif)# exit
```

(Optional) Exits the subinterface configuration mode.

- The **exit** command is not explicitly required.

Step 6 Repeat Step 2 through Step 5 to define the rest of the VLAN subinterfaces.

—

Step 7 **end** or **commit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# end
```

or

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# commit
```

Saves configuration changes.

- When you issue the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes:

  ```
  Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)?
  [cancel]:
  ```

  - Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.

  - Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.

  - Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.

- Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Step 8 **show ethernet trunk bundle-ether** *instance*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# show ethernet trunk bundle-ether 5
```

(Optional) Displays the interface configuration.

The Ethernet bundle instance range is from 1 through 65535.

Verification

This example shows how to verify the configuration of Ethernet interfaces :

```
# show ethernet trunk be 1020 Wed May 17 16:43:32.804 EDT

Trunk                                  Sub types         Sub states
Interface      St Ly    MTU    Subs       L2       L3       Up    Down  Ad-Down
BE1020       Up L3   9100       3        3        0        3       0        0

Summary                             3        3        0        3       0        0
```

Configuring an Attachment Circuit on a VLAN

Use the following procedure to configure an attachment circuit on a VLAN.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0//CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **interface [GigabitEthernet | TenGigE | Bundle-Ether | FortyGigE]** *interface-path*] *id.subinterface* **l2transport**

Example:

```
RP/0//CPU0:router(config)# interface TenGigE 0/0/0/1.1 l2transport
```

Enters subinterface configuration and specifies the interface type, location, and subinterface number.

- Replace the *interface-path-id* argument with one of the following instances:
- Physical Ethernet interface instance, or with an Ethernet bundle instance. Naming notation is *rack*/*slot*/*module*/*port*, and a slash between values is required as part of the notation.
- Ethernet bundle instance. Range is from 1 through 65535.
- Replace the *subinterface* argument with the subinterface value. Range is from 0 through 4095.

- Naming notation is *instance.subinterface*, and a period between arguments is required as part of the notation.
- You must include the **l2transport** keyword in the command string; otherwise, the configuration creates a Layer 3 subinterface rather that an AC.

Step 3 **encapsulation dot1q 100**

Example:

```
RP/0//CPU0:router (config-subif)# encapsulation dot1q 100
```

Sets the Layer 2 encapsulation of an interface.

Note
The **dot1q vlan** command is replaced by the **encapsulation dot1q** command. It is still available for backward-compatibility, but only for Layer 3 interfaces.

Step 4 **end** or **commit**

Example:

```
RP/0//CPU0:router(config-if-l2)# end
```

or

```
RP/0//CPU0:router(config-if-l2)# commit
```

Saves configuration changes.

- When you issue the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes:

  ```
  Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)?
  [cancel]:
  ```

  - Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.

  - Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.

  - Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.

- Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.

Step 5 **show interfaces** [**GigabitEthernet** |**FortyGigE**|**Bundle-Ether** | **TenGigE**] *interface-path-id.subinterface*

Example:

```
RP/0//CPU0:router# show interfaces TenGigE 0/0/0/3.1
```

(Optional) Displays statistics for interfaces on the router.

Removing an 802.1Q VLAN Subinterface

This task explains how to remove 802.1Q VLAN subinterfaces that have been previously configured using the Configuring 802.1Q VLAN subinterfaces section in this module.

Procedure

Step 1 **configure**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
```

Enters global configuration mode.

Step 2 **no interface** {**TenGigE** | **FortyGigE** | **HundredGigE** | **Bundle-Ether**] *interface-path-id.subinterface*

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# no interface TenGigE 0/0/0/4.10
```

Removes the subinterface, which also automatically deletes all the configuration applied to the subinterface.

- Replace the *instance* argument with one of the following instances:
- Physical Ethernet interface instance, or with an Ethernet bundle instance. Naming notation is *rack*/*slot*/*module*/*port*, and a slash between values is required as part of the notation.
- Ethernet bundle instance. Range is from 1 through 65535.
- Replace the *subinterface* argument with the subinterface value. Range is from 0 through 2147483647.

Naming notation is *instance.subinterface*, and a period between arguments is required as part of the notation.

Step 3 Repeat Step 2 to remove other VLAN subinterfaces.

—

Step 4 **end** or **commit**

Example:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# end
```

or

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# commit
```

Saves configuration changes.

- When you issue the **end** command, the system prompts you to commit changes:

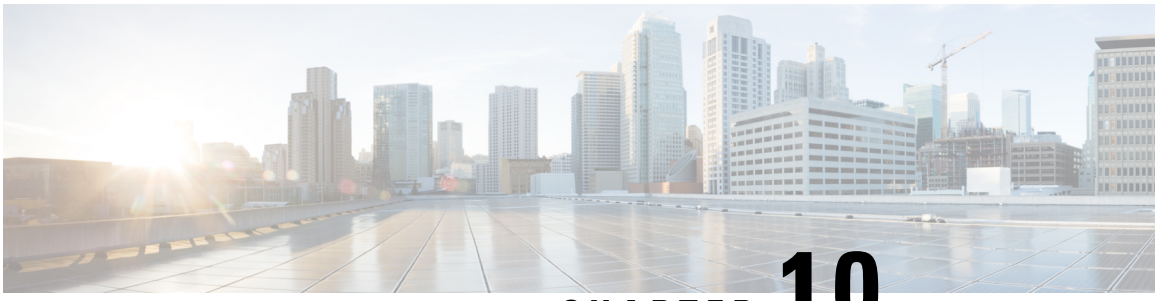
```
Uncommitted changes found, commit them before exiting(yes/no/cancel)?
[cancel]:
```

- Entering **yes** saves configuration changes to the running configuration file, exits the configuration session, and returns the router to EXEC mode.

- Entering **no** exits the configuration session and returns the router to EXEC mode without committing the configuration changes.

- Entering **cancel** leaves the router in the current configuration session without exiting or committing the configuration changes.

- Use the **commit** command to save the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remain within the configuration session.



CHAPTER 10

Configuring GRE Tunnels

Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) is a tunneling protocol that provides a simple generic approach to transport packets of one protocol over another protocol by means of encapsulation. This module provides information about how to configure a GRE tunnel.

- Configuring GRE Tunnels, on page 195
- Single Pass GRE Encapsulation Allowing Line Rate Encapsulation, on page 197

Configuring GRE Tunnels

Tunneling provides a mechanism to transport packets of one protocol within another protocol. Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) is a tunneling protocol that provides a simple generic approach to transport packets of one protocol over another protocol with encapsulation. GRE encapsulates a payload, that is, an inner packet that needs to be delivered to a destination network inside an outer IP packet. The GRE tunnel behave as virtual point-to-point link that have two endpoints identified by the tunnel source and tunnel destination address. The tunnel endpoints send payloads through GRE tunnels by routing encapsulated packets through intervening IP networks. Other IP routers along the way do not parse the payload (the inner packet); they only parse the outer IP packet as they forward it towards the GRE tunnel endpoint. Upon reaching the tunnel endpoint, GRE encapsulation is removed and the payload is forwarded to the packet's ultimate destination.

Encapsulation by the outer packet takes place at the tunnel source whereas decapsulation of the outer packet takes place at the tunnel destination. Encapsulation and decapsulation data is collected periodically or on demand. Encapsulation statistics provide us the number of packets encapsulated at the tunnel source. Decapsulation statistics provide us the number of packets that are decapsulated at the tunnel destination. This data is stored as statistics in logical tables that are based on statistics type in the route processor. The different statistics types include L2 Interface TX Stats, L3 Interface TX Stats, TRAP stats, and so on. Encapsulation statistics can help you to infer the source of the traffic, and decapsulation statistics provide you the destination of the traffic. Decapsulation statistics also help you to detect the type of traffic as well.

Starting with Cisco IOS XR Release 7.0.1, GRE is supported on the Cisco NCS 540 variants:

- N540-28Z4C-SYS-A
- N540-28Z4C-SYS-D
- N540X-16Z4G8Q2C-A
- N540X-16Z4G8Q2C-D
- N540X-16Z8Q2C-D

- N540-12Z20G-SYS-A
- N540-12Z20G-SYS-D
- N540X-12Z16G-SYS-A
- N540X-12Z16G-SYS-D

Starting with Cisco IOS XR Release 7.3.1, GRE is supported on the Cisco NCS 540 variants:

- N540X-6Z18G-SYS-A
- N540X-6Z18G-SYS-D
- N540X-8Z16G-SYS-A
- N540X-8Z16G-SYS-D

Guidelines and Restrictions for Configuring GRE Tunnels

The following restrictions apply while configuring GRE tunnels:

- The router supports up to 500 GRE tunnels.
- Only up to 16 unique source IP addresses are supported for the tunnel source.
- 2-pass to Single-pass migration, which means converting the same GRE tunnel, is not possible in a single configuration step. You must first delete the 2-pass tunnel and then add the Single-pass tunnel.
- Configurable MTU is not supported on Single-pass GRE interface, but supported on 2-pass GRE interface.
- To use the outer IPv4 GRE header for IP tunnel decapsulation in the hashing algorithm for ECMP and bundle member selection, use the **hw-module profile load-balance algorithm** command.

Configuration Example

Configuring a GRE tunnel involves creating a tunnel interface and defining the tunnel source and destination. This example shows how to configure a GRE tunnel between Router1 and Router2. You need to configure tunnel interfaces on both the routers. Tunnel source IP address on Router1 will be configured as the tunnel destination IP address on Router2. Tunnel destination IP address on Router1 will be configured as the tunnel source IP address on Router2. In this example, OSPF is used as the routing protocol between the two routers. You can also configure BGP or IS-IS as the routing protocol.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router1# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router1(config)#  interface tunnel-ip 30
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router1(config-if)# tunnel mode gre ipv4
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router(config-if)# ipv4 address 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router1(config-if)# tunnel source 192.168.1.1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router1(config-if)# tunnel destination 192.168.2.1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router1(config-if)# exit
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router1(config)# interface Loopback 0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router1(config-if)# ipv4 address 10.10.10.1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router1(config-if)# exit
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router1(config)# router ospf 1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router1(config-ospf)# router-id 192.168.4.1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router1(config-ospf)# area 0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router1(config-ospf-ar)# interface tunnel-ip 30
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router1(config-ospf-ar)#  interface Loopback 0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router1(config-ospf-ar)# commit
```

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router2# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router2(config)#  interface tunnel-ip 30
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router2(config-if)# tunnel mode gre ipv4
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router2(config-if)# ipv4 address 10.1.1.2 255.255.255.0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router2(config-if)# tunnel source 192.168.2.1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router2(config-if)# tunnel destination 192.168.1.1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router2(config-if)# exit
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router2(config)# interface Loopback 0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router2(config-if)# ipv4 address 2.2.2.2
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router2(config)# router ospf 1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router2(config-ospf)# router-id 192.168.3.1
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router2(config-ospf)# area 0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router2(config-ospf-ar)# interface tunnel-ip 30
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router2(config-ospf-ar)# interface Loopback 0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:Router2(config-if)# commit
```

Single Pass GRE Encapsulation Allowing Line Rate Encapsulation

Single Pass GRE Encapsulation Allowing Line Rate Encapsulation feature, also known as Prefix-based GRE Tunnel Destination for Load Balancing feature, enables line rate GRE encapsulation traffic and enables flow entropy. Data-plane forwarding performance supports full line rate, which is adjusted to consider added encapsulation. GRE tunnel goes down if the destination is not available in RIB. Routing over GRE Single-pass tunnel is not supported in Release 6.3.2, so the traffic that is eligible for GRE encapsulation is identified using an ACL filter that is based on GRE encapsulation. GRE tunnel destination address is an anycast address. All of the GRE encapsulation must be assigned based upon either an ACL or a policy-map, or both. Destinations may be individual addresses or /28 prefixes.

Configure GRE Single-Pass Entropy

Perform the following tasks to configure the GRE Single-Pass Entropy feature:

- GRE Single-pass
- GRE Entropy(ECMP/UCMP)

```
/* GRE Single-Pass */

Router# configure
Router(config)# interface tunnel-ip30016
Router(config-if)# ipv4 address 216.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
Router(config-if)# ipv6 address 216:1:1::1/64
Router(config-if)# ipv6 enable
Router(config-if)# tunnel mode gre ipv4 encap
Router(config-if)# tunnel source Loopback22
Router(config-if)# tunnel destination 170.170.170.22
Router(config-if)# commit
Router(config-if)# exit

/* GRE Entropy(ECMP/UCMP)*/

ECMP (ISIS)

Router# configure
```

```
Router(config)# router isis core
Router(config)# apply-group ISIS-INTERFACE
Router(config-isis)# is-type level-2-only
Router(config-isis)# net 49.1111.0000.0000.002.00
Router(config-isis)# nsr
Router(config-isis)# log adjacency changes
Router(config-isis)# address-family ipv4 unicast
Router(config-isis-af)# metric-style wide
Router(config-isis-af)# metric 2
Router(config-isis-af)# mpls traffic-eng level-2-only
Router(config-isis-af)# mpls traffic-eng router-id Loopback0
Router(config-isis-af)# maximum-paths 5
Router(config-isis-af)# commit
!

/* UCMP(ISIS) */

Router# configure
Router(config)# router isis core
Router(config)# apply-group ISIS-INTERFACE
Router(config-isis)# is-type level-2-only
Router(config-isis)# net 49.1111.0000.0000.002.00
Router(config-isis)# nsr
Router(config-isis)# log adjacency changes
Router(config-isis)# address-family ipv4 unicast
Router(config-isis-af)# metric-style wide
Router(config-isis-af)# ucmp
Router(config-isis-af)# metric 2
Router(config-isis-af)# mpls traffic-eng level-2-only
Router(config-isis-af)# mpls traffic-eng router-id Loopback0
Router(config-isis-af)# maximum-paths 5
Router(config-isis-af)# redistribute connected
Router(config-isis-af)# commit
Router(config-isis-af)# exit
!

Router# configure
Router(config)# interface Bundle-Ether3
Router(config-if)# apply-group ISIS-INTERFACE
Router(config-if)# address-family ipv4 unicast
Router(config-af)# metric 20
Router(config-af)# commit
Router(config-af)# exit
!

Router# configure
Router(config)# interface Bundle-Ether111
Router(config-if)# apply-group ISIS-INTERFACE
Router(config-if)# address-family ipv4 unicast
Router(config-af)# metric 15
Router(config-af)# commit
Router(config-af)# exit
!

/* ECMP(OSPF) */

Router# configure
Router(config)# router ospf 3
Router(config-ospf)# nsr
Router(config-ospf)# maximum paths 5
Router(config-ospf)# address-family ipv4 unicast
Router(config-ospf-af)# area 0
Router(config-ospf-af-ar)# interface Bundle-Ether3
```

```
Router(config-ospf-af-ar-if)# exit
!
Router(config-ospf-af-ar)# interface Bundle-Ether4
Router(config-ospf-af-ar-if)# exit
!
Router(config-ospf-af-ar)# interface Bundle-Ether111
Router(config-ospf-af-ar-if)# exit
!
Router(config-ospf-af-ar)# interface Bundle-Ether112
Router(config-ospf-af-ar-if)# exit
!
Router(config-ospf-af-ar)# interface Loopback23
Router(config-ospf-af-ar-if)# exit
!
Router(config-ospf-af-ar)# interface HundredGigE0/7/0/23interface HundredGigE0/0/1/0
Router(config-ospf-af-ar-if)# commit
Router(config-ospf-af-ar-if)# exit


/* UCMP(OSPF) */

Router# configure
Router(config)# router ospf 3
Router(config-ospf)# nsr
Router(config-ospf)# maximum paths 5
Router(config-ospf)# ucmp
Router(config-ospf)# address-family ipv4 unicast
Router(config-ospf-af)# area 0
Router(config-ospf-af-ar)# interface Bundle-Ether3 cost 2
Router(config-ospf-af-ar-if)# exit
!
Router(config-ospf-af-ar)# interface Bundle-Ether4
Router(config-ospf-af-ar-if)# exit
!
Router(config-ospf-af-ar)# interface Bundle-Ether111
Router(config-ospf-af-ar-if)# exit
!
Router(config-ospf-af-ar)# interface Bundle-Ether112 cost 2
Router(config-ospf-af-ar-if)# exit
!
Router(config-ospf-af-ar)# interface Loopback23
Router(config-ospf-af-ar-if)# exit
!
Router(config-ospf-af-ar)# interface HundredGigE0/7/0/23interface HundredGigE0/0/1/0
Router(config-ospf-af-ar-if)# commit
Router(config-ospf-af-ar-if)# exit


/* ECMP(BGP) */
Router# configure
Router(config)# router bgp 800
Router(config-bgp)# bgp bestpath as-path multipath-relax
Router(config-bgp)# address-family ipv4 unicast
Router(config-bgp-af)# network 170.170.170.3/32
Router(config-bgp-af)# network 170.170.170.10/32
Router(config-bgp-af)# network 170.170.170.11/32
Router(config-bgp-af)# network 170.170.172.3/32
Router(config-bgp-af)# network 180.180.180.9/32
Router(config-bgp-af)# network 180.180.180.20/32
Router(config-bgp-af)# network 180.180.180.21/32
Router(config-bgp-af)# network 180.180.180.24/32
Router(config-bgp-af)# network 180.180.180.25/32
Router(config-bgp-af)# commit
```

```
!
Router# configure
Router(config)# router bgp 800
Router(config-bgp)# neighbor 4.1.1.2
Router(config-bgp-nbr)# remote-as 300
Router(config-bgp-nbr)# address-family ipv4 unicast
Router(config-bgp-nbr-af)# address-family ipv4 unicast
Router(config-bgp-nbr-af)# route-policy pass-all in
Router(config-bgp-nbr-af)# route-policy pass-all out
Router(config-bgp-nbr-af)# commit
!

/* UCMP(BGP) */

Router# configure
Router(config)# router bgp 800
Router(config-bgp)# bgp bestpath as-path multipath-relax
Router(config-bgp)# address-family ipv4 unicast
Router(config-bgp-af)# maximum-paths ebgp 5
Router(config-bgp-af)# network 180.180.180.9/32
Router(config-bgp-af)# network 180.180.180.20/32
Router(config-bgp-af)# network 180.180.180.21/32
Router(config-bgp-af)# network 180.180.180.24/32
Router(config-bgp-af)# network 180.180.180.25/32
Router(config-bgp-af)# commit
!
Router# configure
Router(config)# router bgp 800
Router(config-bgp)# neighbor 7.1.5.2
Router(config-bgp-nbr)# remote-as 4000
Router(config-bgp-nbr)# address-family ipv4 unicast
Router(config-bgp-nbr-af)# address-family ipv4 unicast
Router(config-bgp-nbr-af)# route-policy TRANSIT0_IN in
Router(config-bgp-nbr-af)# route-policy pass-all out
Router(config-bgp-nbr-af)# next-hop-self
Router(config-bgp-nbr-af)# commit
!
Router# configure
Router(config)# router bgp 800
Router(config-bgp)# 4.1.111.2
Router(config-bgp-nbr)# remote-as 4000
Router(config-bgp-nbr)# address-family ipv4 unicast
Router(config-bgp-nbr-af)# address-family ipv4 unicast
Router(config-bgp-nbr-af)# route-policy TRANSIT0_IN in
Router(config-bgp-nbr-af)# route-policy pass-all out
Router(config-bgp-nbr-af)# next-hop-self
Router(config-bgp-nbr-af)# commit
!

/* Configure roupte policy */

Router# configure
Router(config)# route-policy TRANSIT0_IN
Router(config-rpl)# if destination in (170.170.170.24/32) then
Router(config-rpl-if)# set extcommunity bandwidth (2906:1250000)
Router(config-rpl-if)# else
Router(config-rpl-else)# pass
Router(config-rpl-else)# endif
Router(config-rpl)# end-policy
!

Router# configure
Router(config)# route-policy TRANSIT1_IN
```

```
Router(config-rpl)# if destination in (170.170.170.24/32) then
Router(config-rpl-if)# set extcommunity bandwidth (2906:37500000
Router(config-rpl-if)# else
Router(config-rpl-else)# pass
Router(config-rpl-else)# endif
Router(config-rpl)# end-policy
```

Running Configuration

```
/* GRE Single-Pass configuration */

interface tunnel-ip30016
ipv4 address 216.1.1.1 255.255.255.0
ipv6 address 216:1:1::1/64
ipv6 enable
tunnel mode gre ipv4 encap
tunnel source Loopback22
tunnel destination 170.170.170.22
!

/* GRE Entropy(ECMP/UCMP) */

ECMP (ISIS)

router isis core
apply-group ISIS-INTERFACE
is-type level-2-only
net 49.1111.0000.0000.002.00
nsr
log adjacency changes
address-family ipv4 unicast
metric-style wide
metric 2
mpls traffic-eng level-2-only
mpls traffic-eng router-id Loopback0
maximum-paths 5
!

/* UCMP(ISIS) */

router isis core
apply-group ISIS-INTERFACE
is-type level-2-only
net 49.1111.0000.0000.002.00
nsr
log adjacency changes
address-family ipv4 unicast
metric-style wide
ucmp
metric 2
mpls traffic-eng level-2-only
mpls traffic-eng router-id Loopback0
maximum-paths 5
redistribute connected
!
interface Bundle-Ether3
apply-group ISIS-INTERFACE
address-family ipv4 unicast
metric 20
!
```

```
interface Bundle-Ether111
apply-group ISIS-INTERFACE
address-family ipv4 unicast
metric 15
!

!

/* ECMP(OSPF) */

router ospf 3
nsr
maximum paths 5
address-family ipv4 unicast
area 0
interface Bundle-Ether3
!
interface Bundle-Ether4
!
interface Bundle-Ether111
!
interface Bundle-Ether112
!
interface Loopback23
!
interface HundredGigE0/7/0/23HundredGigE0/0/1/0
!
!
!
/* UCMP (OSPF) */

router ospf 3
nsr
maximum paths 5
ucmp
address-family ipv4 unicast
area 0
interface Bundle-Ether3
cost 2
!
interface Bundle-Ether4
!
interface Bundle-Ether111
!
interface Bundle-Ether112
cost 2
!
interface Loopback23
!
interface HundredGigE0/7/0/23HundredGigE0/0/1/0
!
!
!

/* ECMP(BGP)*/

router bgp 800
bgp bestpath as-path multipath-relax
address-family ipv4 unicast
maximum-paths ebgp 5
network 170.170.170.3/32
network 170.170.170.10/32
network 170.170.170.11/32
network 170.170.172.3/32
```

```
network 180.180.180.9/32
network 180.180.180.20/32
network 180.180.180.21/32
network 180.180.180.24/32
network 180.180.180.25/32
!
neighbor 4.1.1.2
remote-as 300
address-family ipv4 unicast
route-policy PASS-ALL in
route-policy PASS-ALL out
next-hop-self
!
!

/* UCMP(BGP) */

router bgp 800
bgp bestpath as-path multipath-relax
address-family ipv4 unicast
maximum-paths ebgp 5
network 180.180.180.9/32
network 180.180.180.20/32
network 180.180.180.21/32
network 180.180.180.24/32
network 180.180.180.25/32
!

neighbor 7.1.5.2
remote-as 4000
address-family ipv4 unicast
route-policy TRANSIT0_IN in
route-policy PASS-ALL out
next-hop-self
!
!
neighbor 4.1.111.2
remote-as 4000
address-family ipv4 unicast
route-policy TRANSIT1_IN in
route-policy PASS-ALL out
next-hop-self
!
!

/* Configure roupte policy */

route-policy TRANSIT0_IN
if destination in (170.170.170.24/32) then
set extcommunity bandwidth (2906:1250000)
else
pass
endif
end-policy
!
route-policy TRANSIT1_IN
if destination in (170.170.170.24/32) then
set extcommunity bandwidth (2906:37500000)
else
pass
endif
end-policy
!
```

Verification

Verify if the tunnel mode GRE encapsulation is enabled.

```
Router# show int tunnel-ip2

interface tunnel-ip2
 ipv4 address 80.80.82.1 255.255.255.0
 ipv6 address 2000:80:80:82::1/64
 load-interval 30
 tunnel mode gre ipv4 encap
 tunnel source Loopback4
 tunnel destination 11.4.2.2
!

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:PE1_5516#show int tunnel-ip2
tunnel-ip2 is up, line protocol is up
  Interface state transitions: 1
  Hardware is Tunnel
  Internet address is 80.80.82.1/24
  MTU 1500 bytes, BW 100 Kbit (Max: 100 Kbit)
     reliability 255/255, txload 0/255, rxload 0/255
  Encapsulation TUNNEL_IP,  loopback not set,
  Last link flapped 1d18h
  Tunnel TOS 0
  Tunnel mode GRE IPV4, encap
  Keepalive is disabled.
  Tunnel source 11.11.12.1 (Loopback4), destination 11.4.2.2/32
  Tunnel TTL 255
  Last input never, output never
  Last clearing of "show interface" counters 14:53:37
  30 second input rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
  30 second output rate 0 bits/sec, 0 packets/sec
     0 packets input, 0 bytes, 0 total input drops
     0 drops for unrecognized upper-level protocol
     Received 0 broadcast packets, 0 multicast packets
     0 packets output, 0 bytes, 0 total output drops
     Output 0 broadcast packets, 0 multicast packets
```

Verify if the recycle of the packets are not done under Recycle VoQ: 48:

```
 Router# show tunnel ip ea summary location 0/7/CPU0

Number of tunnel updates to retry: 0
Number of tunnel updates retried: 0
Number of tunnel retries failed: 0
Platform:
Recycle VoQ: 48
          ReceivedBytes   ReceivedPackets    ReceivedKbps
          DroppedBytes    DroppedPackets     DroppedKbps

NPU 0:0      0               0                   0
             0               0                   0
1            0               0                   0
             0               0                   0
2            0               0                   0
             0               0                   0
3            0               0                   0
             0               0                   0
...
NPU 1:0      0               0                   0
             0               0                   0
1            0               0                   0
             0               0                   0
```

```
2             0                 0                     0
              0                 0                     0
3             0                 0                     0
              0                 0                     0

NPU 2:0       0                 0                     0
              0                 0                     0
1             0                 0                     0
              0                 0                     0
2             0                 0                     0
              0                 0                     0
3             0                 0                     0
              0                 0                     0
```

Verify if the tunnel mode GRE encapsulation is enabled.

```
Router# show interfaces tunnel-ip * brief

Thu Sep 7 00:04:39.125 PDT
Intf Intf LineP Encap MTU BW
Name     State    State   Type       (byte) (Kbps)
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
ti30001  down     down    TUNNEL_IP   1500   100
ti30002  up       up      TUNNEL_IP   1500   100
```

Verify the tunnel endpoint route in RIB.

```
Router# show route 10.1.1.1

Routing entry for 10.0.0.0/8
Known via "static", distance 1, metric 0 (connected)
Installed Oct 2 15:50:56.755 for 00:39:24
Routing Descriptor Blocks
directly connected, via tunnel-ip109
Route metric is 0, Wt is 1
No advertising protos.
```

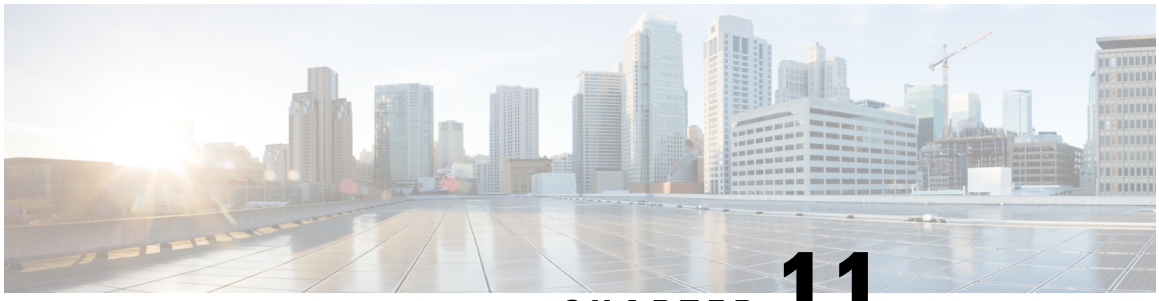
Verify if the tunnel mode GRE encapsulation is enabled.

```
Router# show tunnel ip ea database tunnel-ip 109 location 0/7/CPU0

----- node0_0_CPU0 -----
tunnel ifhandle 0x80022cc
tunnel source 161.115.1.2
tunnel destination 162.1.1.1/32
tunnel transport vrf table id 0xe0000000
tunnel mode gre ipv4, encap
tunnel bandwidth 100 kbps
tunnel platform id 0x0
tunnel flags 0x40003400
IntfStateUp
BcStateUp
Ipv4Caps
Encap
tunnel mtu 1500
tunnel tos 0
tunnel ttl 255
tunnel adjacency flags 0x1
tunnel o/p interface handle 0x0
tunnel key 0x0, entropy length 0 (mask 0xffffffff)
tunnel QT next 0x0
tunnel platform data (nil)
Platform:
Handle: (nil)
Decap ID: 0
Decap RIF: 0
```

```
Decap Recycle Encap ID: 0x00000000
Encap RIF: 0
Encap Recycle Encap ID: 0x00000000
Encap IPv4 Encap ID: 0x4001381b
Encap IPv6 Encap ID: 0x00000000
Encap MPLS Encap ID: 0x00000000
DecFEC DecRcyLIF DecStatsId EncRcyLIF
```

Verify if the QoS table is updated properly.

```
Router# show controllers npu stats voq base 48 instance all location
0/0/CPU0
Asic Instance = 0
VOQ Base = 48
       ReceivedPkts    ReceivedBytes    DroppedPkts    DroppedBytes
------------------------------------------------------------------
COS0 =   0              0               0              0
COS1 =   0              0               0              0
COS2 =   0              0               0              0
COS3 =   0              0               0              0

Asic Instance = 1
VOQ Base = 48
       ReceivedPkts    ReceivedBytes    DroppedPkts    DroppedBytes
------------------------------------------------------------------
COS0 =   0              0               0              0
COS1 =   0              0               0              0
COS2 =   0              0               0              0
COS3 =   0              0               0              0

Asic Instance = 2
VOQ Base = 48
       ReceivedPkts    ReceivedBytes    DroppedPkts    DroppedBytes
------------------------------------------------------------------
COS0 =   0              0               0              0
COS1 =   0              0               0              0
COS2 =   0              0               0              0
COS3 =   0              0               0              0
```



CHAPTER 11

Configuring Controllers

This chapter describes the Optics Controller . This chapter also describes the procedures used to configure the controllers.

Note When you plan to replace a configured optical module with a different type of optical module, you must clear the configurations of the old module before installing the new optical module.

- Optics Controllers, on page 207
- How to Configure Controllers, on page 207

Optics Controllers

Controllers are represented in the *rack*/*slot*/*instance*/*port* format (*r*/*s*/*i*/*p*); for example, 0/3/0/1. Each port has an optics controller that is created on startup.

Note You must shut down the optics controller before you perform any of the following tasks:

- Configure the controller
- Restore a saved configuration
- Upgrade the DSP processor or CFP2 optics module Field Programmable Device (FPD)

Note When there are dualrate optics on NCS-57C3-MOD-S/-SE-S + NC57-MPA-12L-S, and while configuring lower speed, you may see a few initial link flaps, after that the link stabilizes and no further flaps will be seen.

How to Configure Controllers

This section contains the following procedures:

Configuring Optics Controller

To configure the Optics controller, use the following commands:

Before you begin

You must shut down the optics controller before you perform any of the following tasks:

- Configure the controller
- Restore a saved configuration

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure terminal`	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	**controller optics** *r/s/i/p* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# controller optics 0/3/0/1`	Enters optics controller configuration mode.
Step 3	**shutdown** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# shutdown`	Shuts down the optics controller.
Step 4	**commit** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# commit`	Saves the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remains within the configuration session.
Step 5	**rx-high-threshold** *rx-high* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# rx-high-threshold 200`	Configures the high receive power threshold. The range is -400 to 300 (in the units of 0.1 dBm).
Step 6	**tx-high-threshold** *tx-high* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# tx-high-threshold 300`	Configures the high transmit power threshold. The range is -400 to 300 dBm (in the units of 0.1 dBm).

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 7	**no shutdown** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# no shutdown`	Removes the shutdown configuration on the optics controller.
Step 8	**commit** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# commit`	Saves the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remains within the configuration session.

Configure Port Mode Speed

To configure the port mode speed, use the following commands:

Before you begin

Ensure that you shut down the controller before you configure the controller or restore a saved configuration.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure`	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	**controller optics** *r*/*s*/*i*/*p* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# controller optics 0/3/0/0`	Enters optics controller configuration mode
Step 3	**shutdown** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# shutdown`	Shuts down the optics controller.
Step 4	**commit** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# commit`	Saves the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remains within the configuration session.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 5	**port-mode speed** { **100G** | **150G** | **200G** } **mod** { **16qam** | **8qam** |**qpsk** } **fec** { **15sdfec** | **15sdfecde** | **25sdfec** | **otu7staircase** } **diff** { **enable** | **disable** } **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# port-mode speed 100G mod qpsk fec 15sdfec diff`	Configures the port mode speed.
Step 6	**no shutdown** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# no shutdown`	Removes the shutdown configuration on the optics controller.
Step 7	**commit** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# commit`	Saves the configuration changes to the running configuration file.

If you need to change the port-mode speed, ensure that you remove the existing port mode speed configuration by entering the **no port-mode** command. You can then change the port mode speed.

The following example shows how to change the port mode speed to 100Gbps.

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# controller optics 0/3/0/0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# shutdown
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# commit
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# no port-mode
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# commit
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# port-mode speed 100G mod qpsk fec 15sdfec diff enable
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# commit
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# no shutdown
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# commit
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# exit
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)#
```

To modify the default 25Gpbs mode into 10Gbps mode, perform the below configuration:

Before Cisco IOS XR Release 7.5.1:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# hw-module quad 0 location 0/0/CPU0

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-quad-0x0)# mode 10g
```

From Cisco IOS XR Release 7.5.1:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# hw-module quad 0 location 0/0/CPU0 instance 1 mode 10g

RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-quad-0x0)# mode 10g
```

Note A quad number always starts from 0 to the maximum supported number. The number of quads supported varies from platform to platform and the CLI validates it. For example, the NCS 540 Series Router supports two quads (0 and 1). If you enter X=3, the CLI returns an error.

Here, `instance` indicates the MPA card instance. It can range from 0-5. For Cisco NCS 540 Series Routers, it is always 0. Whereas, for Cisco NCS 5500 Series Routers, the instance can be between 0-5, adding 1 for every MPA instance. The default value is 0.

Starting with Cisco IOS XR Release 24.2.1, you can configure 50Gpbs mode only on NC-57-48Q2D-S and NC-57-48Q2D-SE-S line cards.

Note A quad number always starts from 0 to the maximum supported number. The number of quads supported varies from platform to platform and the CLI validates it. For example, the NCS 540 Series Router supports two quads (0 and 1). If you enter X=3, the CLI returns an error.

Here, `instance` indicates the MPA card instance. It can range from 0-5. For Cisco NCS 540 Series Routers, it is always 0. Whereas, for Cisco NCS 5500 Series Routers, the instance can be between 0-5, adding 1 for every MPA instance. The default value is 0.

Note To revert to the default 25Gbps mode, use the `no` form of the `hw-module quad` command.

After you configure the port-mode speed, you can configure the following interfaces:

- 100G – Each optics controller configuration creates a single 100GE port:
  - **interface HundredGigE** *r*/*s*/*i*/*p*/**0** (where*p* = CTP2 port 0-5)

    0/3/0/0/0

    0/3/0/1/0

    0/3/0/2/0

    0/3/0/3/0

    0/3/0/4/0

    0/3/0/5/0

- 200G – Each optics controller configuration creates two 100GE ports:
  - **interface HundredGigE** *r*/*s*/*i*/*p*/**0,** *r*/*s*/*i*/*p*/**1** (where*p* = CTP2 port 0-5

    0/3/0/0/0, 0/3/0/0/1

    0/3/0/1/0, 0/3/0/1/1

    0/3/0/2/0, 0/3/0/2/1

    0/3/0/3/0, 0/3/0/3/1

    0/3/0/4/0, 0/3/0/4/1

0/3/0/5/0, 0/3/0/5/1

- 150G (coupled) – Coupled optics controller configuration creates three 100GE port:
  - **interface HundredGigE** *r*/*s*/*i*/*p*/**0,** *r*/*s*/*i*/*p*/**1,** *r*/*s*/*i*/*p*+1/**0** (where*p* = CTP2 port: 0, 2, 4 [port *p* and *p* +1 are coupled])

    0/3/0/0/0, 0/3/0/0/1, 0/3/0/1/0

    0/3/0/2/0, 0/3/0/2/1, 0/3/0/3/0

    0/3/0/4/0, 0/3/0/4/1, 0/3/0/5/0

For more information, see the *Configuring Ethernet Interfaces* chapter.

Configuring Wavelength

To configure wavelength, use the following commands:

Before you begin

- Before configuring the wavelength, use the **show controllers optics***r*/*s*/*i*/*p* **dwdm-carrrier-map** command to display the wavelength and channel mapping for optics controllers.
- You must shut down the controller before you configure the controller or restore a saved configuration.

Procedure

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 1	**configure** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router# configure`	Enters global configuration mode.
Step 2	**controller optics** *r*/*s*/*i*/*p* **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)# controller optics 0/3/0/1`	Enters optics controller configuration mode.
Step 3	**shutdown** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# shutdown`	Shuts down the optics controller.

	Command or Action	Purpose
Step 4	**commit** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# commit`	Saves the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remains within the configuration session.
Step 5	**dwdm-carrier** {**100MHz-grid frequency** *frequency* } | {**50GHz-grid** [**frequency** *frequency* | *channel-number*] } **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# dwdm-carrier 100MHz-grid frequency 1960875`	Configures the frequency on the trunk port.
Step 6	**no shutdown** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# no shutdown`	Removes the shutdown configuration on the optics controller.
Step 7	**commit** **Example:** `RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)# commit`	Saves the configuration changes to the running configuration file and remains within the configuration session.

To configure a DWDM carrier with the required frequency:

```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#config
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config)#controller Optics0/3/0/0
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)#dwdm-carrier
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)#dwdm-carrier 100MHz-grid
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)#dwdm-carrier 100MHz-grid frequency
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router(config-Optics)#dwdm-carrier 100MHz-grid frequency 1960625
```

The output of `show run controller optics 0/3/0/0` command is:

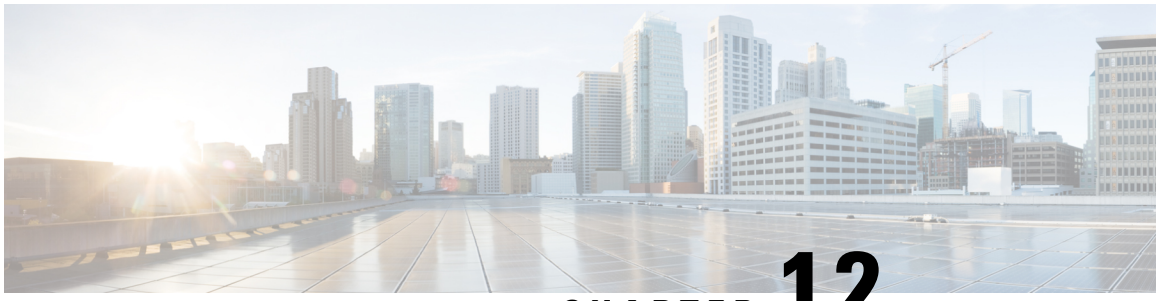
```
RP/0/RP0/CPU0:router#show run controller optics 0/3/0/0
Wed Nov  6 13:47:33.178 UTC
controller Optics0/3/0/0
transmit-power -7
port-mode speed 100G mod qpsk fec 25sdfec diff disable
dwdm-carrier 100MHz-grid frequency 1960625
```

Note When you bring up the local optics controller, you might briefly see transient loss of signal (LOS) alarms on the console. This behavior might be observed during the initial tuning of the channel.

```
PKT_INFRA-FM-2-FAULT_CRITICAL : ALARM_CRITICAL :LOS-P :DECLARE :CoherentDSP0/3/0/1:
PKT_INFRA-FM-2-FAULT_CRITICAL : ALARM_CRITICAL :LOS-P :CLEAR :CoherentDSP0/3/0/1:
```

During the laser-on process, you might briefly see transient loss of line (LOL) alarms on the console. This alarm is cleared when the laser-on process is complete.

```
PKT_INFRA-FM-3-FAULT_MAJOR : ALARM_MAJOR :CTP2 RX LOL :DECLARE ::
PKT_INFRA-FM-3-FAULT_MAJOR : ALARM_MAJOR :CTP2 RX LOL :CLEAR ::
```



CHAPTER 12

Configuring 400G Digital Coherent Optics

The following 400G Digital Coherent QSFP-DD optical modules are supported:

- QDD-400G-ZR-S
- QDD-400G-ZRP-S

Note

- The information in this chapter applies to all supported 400G Digital Coherent QSFP-DD optical modules unless otherwise specified.
- To determine the transceivers that Cisco hardware device supports, refer to the Transceiver Module Group (TMG) Compatibility Matrix tool.

This chapter describes the 400G Digital Coherent QSFP-DD optical modules and their supported configurations.

Table 13: Hardware and Software Support

Hardware PID	Optics PID	Minimum IOS XR Software Release

The 400G Digital Coherent QSFP-DD optical modules enable wavelength-division multiplexing (WDM) functionality in the router. These optical modules are DWDM C-band (196.1 THz to 191.3 THz) tunable optical modules. They can be used in both transponder and muxponder modes.

Cisco IOS XR software creates optics and coherent DSP controllers to configure and monitor the performance of the 400G Digital Coherent QSFP-DD optical modules. Optics controllers are used to configure and monitor optical parameters, such as frequency, chromatic dispersion, transmitted output power, modulation, and so on. Coherent DSP controllers are used to monitor network performance parameters like pre- and post-forward error correction (FEC) bit-error rate (pre-FEC BER, post-FEC BER), error corrected bits (EC-BITS), and so on. Forward error correction (FEC) is configured using optical controllers and monitored using coherent DSP controllers.

The 400G Digital Coherent QSFP-DD optical modules support traffic configuration and firmware download. The Cisco IOS XR software collects performance monitoring data and alarms using versatile DOM (VDM).

Due to more power consumption by the 400G Digital Coherent QSFP-DD optical modules, the Cisco IOS XR software operates the fans at an higher speed to cool these optical modules.

The 400G Digital Coherent QSFP-DD optical module configuration is divided into the following categories:

- Traffic configuration – Comprises configuring DAC rate, muxponder mode, modulation, and FEC parameters. Applicable for optics controllers:
  - Configuring DAC Rate, on page 229
  - Configuring Muxponder Mode, on page 224
  - Configuring Modulation, on page 228
  - Configuring FEC, on page 231
- Optical configuration – Comprises configuring frequency, chromatic dispersion, and optical transmit power. Applicable for optics controllers:
  - Configuring Frequency, on page 218
  - Configuring Chromatic Dispersion, on page 220
  - Configuring Optical Transmit Power, on page 222
- Performance monitoring (PM) – Enables or disables performance monitoring in optical modules. You can also configure PM parameters that comprise signal power, chromatic dispersion, optical signal-to-noise ratio (OSNR), and differential group delay (DGD). Applicable for optics controllers and coherent DSP controllers:
  - Configuring Performance Monitoring, on page 233
  - Configuring PM Parameters, on page 234
- Loopback configuration – Configures loopback. Applicable for coherent DSP controller:
  - Configuring Loopback, on page 232
- Alarms threshold configuration – Configures thresholds for monitoring alarms that include optical signal-to-noise ratio (OSNR), differential group delay (DGD), chromatic dispersion (cd high and low), and so on. Applicable for optics controllers:
  - Configuring Alarms Threshold, on page 237

The following table contains the possible traffic configuration values for the 400G Digital Coherent QSFP-DD optical modules, in the transponder and muxponder mode:

FPD Upgrades Enabled for QDD-400G-ZR-S and QDD-400G-ZRP-S Optical Modules

Table 14: Feature History Table

Feature Name	Release Information	Feature Description
FPD Upgrades Enabled for QDD-400G-ZR-S and QDD-400G-ZRP-S Optical Modules	Release 7.3.2	This feature allows you to perform Field Programmable Device (FPD) upgrades on the QDD-400G-ZR-S and QDD-400G-ZRP-S optical modules to ensure they have the latest fixes and features. For more information about the optic module portfolio, see the Cisco 400G Digital Coherent Optics QSFP-DD Optical Modules Data Sheet.

Although an FPD upgrade is not mandatory in this release, we recommend upgrading the FPD to the latest version in the subsequent releases to ensure that all the latest fixes and features are enabled on the optical modules.

The QDD-400G-ZR-S and QDD-400G-ZRP-S optical modules have two internal FPD image banks: image banks A and B. These image banks contain running and programmed FPD versions, which are fetched during boot-up. The active image is fetched from bank A, while the standby image is fetched from bank B. To upgrade the optical modules, you must perform the FPD upgrade twice, once for the active image bank and once for the standby image bank. After each upgrade, you must disable and re-enable the QDD-400G-ZR-S and QDD-400G-ZRP-S optical modules using the **controller optics** command to activate the latest firmware.

QDD-400G-ZR-S Transponder and Muxponder Configuration Values

The following table contains the possible Transponder and Muxponder configuration values for the QDD-400G-ZR-S optical module:

Table 15: QDD-400G-ZR-S Transponder and Muxponder Configuration Values

TXP/MXP	Client	Trunk	Modulation	FEC	DAC Rate
400G-TXP	1 client, 400G speed	1 trunk, 400G	16 QAM	cFEC	1x1
4x100G- MXP	4 clients, 100G speed	1 trunk, 400G	16 QAM	cFEC	1x1

QDD-400G-ZRP-S Transponder and Muxponder Configuration Values

The following table contains the possible Transponder and Muxponder configuration values for the QDD-400G-ZRP-S optical module:

Table 16: QDD-400G-ZRP-S Transponder and Muxponder Configuration Values

TXP/MXP	Client	Trunk	Modulation	FEC	DAC Rate
400G-TXP	1 Client, 400G speed	1 trunk, 400G speed	16 QAM	oFEC	1x1.25
400G-TXP	1 Client, 400G speed	1 trunk, 400G speed	16 QAM	cFEC	1x1
4x100G- MXP	4 clients, 100G speed	1 trunk, 400G speed	16 QAM	oFEC	1x1.25
4x100G- MXP	4 clients, 100G speed	1 trunk, 400G speed	16 QAM	cFEC	1x1
3x100G-MXP	3 clients, 100G speed	1 trunk, 300G speed	8 QAM	oFEC	1x1.25
2x100G-MXP	2 clients, 100G speed	1 trunk, 200G speed	QPSK	oFEC	1x1.5
1x100G-TXP	1 client, 100G speed	1 trunk, 100G speed	QPSK	oFEC	1x1.5

- Configuring Frequency, on page 218
- Configuring Chromatic Dispersion, on page 220
- Configuring Optical Transmit Power, on page 222
- Configuring Muxponder Mode, on page 224
- Configuring Modulation, on page 228
- Configuring DAC Rate, on page 229
- Configuring FEC, on page 231
- Configuring Loopback, on page 232
- Configuring Performance Monitoring, on page 233
- Configuring PM Parameters, on page 234
- Configuring Alarms Threshold, on page 237
- Alarms Troubleshooting, on page 239

Configuring Frequency

You can configure frequency on optics controllers. You can select any C band frequency between the range 196.1 to 191.3 THz, in both ITU and NON-ITU channels.

Note The 100MHz-grid keyword accepts only frequency values as user input. The 50GHz-grid keyword accepts frequency, ITU-channel, or wavelength values as user input. The Cisco IOS XR software then caculates the frequency for a given wavelength or ITU-channel.

Frequency Configuration Example

The following example shows how to configure frequency on the optics controller:

```
Router#config
Router(config)#controller optics 0/2/0/16
Router(config-Optics)#dwdm-carrier 100MHz-grid frequency 1921500
Router(config-Optics)#commit
Router(config-Optics)#exit
Router(config)#exit
```

Running Configuration

This example shows the running configuration:

```
Router#show run controller optics 0/2/0/16
Fri May 28 01:42:32.488 UTC
controller Optics0/2/0/16
 dwdm-carrier 100MHz-grid frequency 1921500
 cd-low-threshold -5000
 cd-high-threshold -5000
!
```

Verification

This example shows how to verify the frequency configuration:

```
Router#show controller optics 0/2/0/16
Fri May 28 01:47:23.953 UTC
 Controller State: Up
 Transport Admin State: In Service
 Laser State: Off
 LED State: Off
 FEC State: FEC ENABLED
 Optics Status
         Optics Type:  QSFPDD 400G ZRP
         DWDM carrier Info: C BAND, MSA ITU Channel=80, Frequency=192.15THz,
         Wavelength=1560.200nm
         Alarm Status:
         -------------
         Detected Alarms: None
         LOS/LOL/Fault Status:
         Alarm Statistics:
         -------------
         HIGH-RX-PWR = 0            LOW-RX-PWR = 0
         HIGH-TX-PWR = 0            LOW-TX-PWR = 0
         HIGH-LBC = 0               HIGH-DGD = 0
         OOR-CD = 0                 OSNR = 0
         WVL-OOL = 0                MEA  = 0
         IMPROPER-REM = 0
         TX-POWER-PROV-MISMATCH = 0
         Laser Bias Current = 0.0 mA
         Actual TX Power = -40.00 dBm
         RX Power = -40.00 dBm
         RX Signal Power = -40.00 dBm
         Frequency Offset = 0 MHz
         Laser Temperature = 0.00 Celsius
         Laser Age = 0 %
         DAC Rate = 1x1.25
         Performance Monitoring: Enable
         THRESHOLD VALUES
         ----------------
         Parameter                High Alarm  Low Alarm  High Warning  Low Warning
         -----------------------  ----------  ---------  ------------  -----------
         Rx Power Threshold(dBm)         13.0      -24.0          10.0        -22.0
         Tx Power Threshold(dBm)          0.0      -16.0          -2.0        -14.0
         LBC Threshold(mA)               0.00       0.00          0.00         0.00
```

```
        Temp. Threshold(celsius)       80.00      -5.00         75.00         0.00
        Voltage Threshold(volt)         3.46       3.13          3.43         3.16
        LBC High Threshold = 98 %
        Configured Tx Power = -10.00 dBm
        Configured CD High Threshold = -5000 ps/nm
        Configured CD lower Threshold = -5000 ps/nm
        Configured OSNR lower Threshold = 9.00 dB
        Configured DGD Higher Threshold = 80.00 ps
        Baud Rate =  60.1385459900 GBd
        Modulation Type: 16QAM
        Chromatic Dispersion 0 ps/nm
        Configured CD-MIN -26000 ps/nm  CD-MAX 26000 ps/nm
        Second Order Polarization Mode Dispersion = 0.00 ps^2
        Optical Signal to Noise Ratio = 0.00 dB
        Polarization Dependent Loss = 0.00 dB
        Polarization Change Rate = 0.00 rad/s
        Differential Group Delay = 0.00 ps
        Temperature = 21.00 Celsius
        Voltage = 3.42 V
 Transceiver Vendor Details
        Form Factor            : QSFP-DD
        Optics type            : QSFPDD 400G ZRP
        Name                   : CISCO-ACACIA
        OUI Number             : 7c.b2.5c
        Part Number            : DP04QSDD-E30-19E
        Rev Number             : 10
        Serial Number          : ACA244900GN
        PID                    : QDD-400G-ZRP-S
        VID                    : ES03
        Firmware Version       : 161.06
        Date Code(yy/mm/dd)    : 20/12/08
!
```

Configuring Chromatic Dispersion

You can configure chromatic dispersion on optics controllers. When you configure the maximum and minimum values for chromatic dispersion for any data rate, ensure that the minimum difference between the configured values is equal to or greater than 1000 ps/nm.

The following table lists the default CD search range:

Table 17: Default CD Search Range

Muxponder Rate	FEC Value	Default CD Search Range (Min-Max)
400	OFEC	-26000 to +26000
400	CFEC	-2400 to +2400
300	OFEC	-50000 to +50000
200	OFEC	-50000 to +50000
100	OFEC	-80000 to +80000

Note For **cd-max** and **cd-min** range details, see the controller optics command.

Chromatic Dispersion Configuration Example

This example shows how to configure chromatic dispersion on the optics controller:

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#controller optics 0/0/0/13
Router(config-Optics)#cd-max 4000
Router(config-Optics)#cd-min -4000
Router(config-Optics)#commit
Router(config-Optics)#exit
Router(config)#exit
```

Running Configuration

This example shows the running configuration for the optics controller:

```
Router#show run controller optics 0/0/0/13
Thu May 13 12:24:42.353 UTC
controller Optics0/0/0/13
 cd-min -4000
 cd-max 4000
 !
```

Verification

This example shows how to verify the configured chromatic dispersion values for the optics controller:

```
Router#show controller optics 0/0/0/13
 Controller State: Up
 Transport Admin State: In Service
 Laser State: On
 LED State: Green
 FEC State: FEC ENABLED
 Optics Status
         Optics Type:  QSFPDD 400G ZR
         DWDM carrier Info: C BAND, MSA ITU Channel=61, Frequency=193.10THz,
         Wavelength=1552.524nm
         Alarm Status:
         -------------
         Detected Alarms: None
         LOS/LOL/Fault Status:
         Alarm Statistics:
         -------------
         HIGH-RX-PWR = 0            LOW-RX-PWR = 0
         HIGH-TX-PWR = 0            LOW-TX-PWR = 0
         HIGH-LBC = 0               HIGH-DGD = 0
         OOR-CD = 0                 OSNR = 35
         WVL-OOL = 0                MEA  = 0
         IMPROPER-REM = 0
         TX-POWER-PROV-MISMATCH = 0
         Laser Bias Current = 0.0 %
         Actual TX Power = -7.87 dBm
         RX Power = -8.27 dBm
         RX Signal Power = -8.43 dBm
         Frequency Offset = 130 MHz
         Performance Monitoring: Enable
         THRESHOLD VALUES
         ----------------
         Parameter                High Alarm  Low Alarm  High Warning  Low Warning
         -----------------------  ----------  ---------  ------------  -----------
```

```
        Rx Power Threshold(dBm)          1.9       -28.2          0.0        -25.0
        Tx Power Threshold(dBm)          0.0       -15.0         -2.0        -16.0
        LBC Threshold(mA)               0.00        0.00         0.00         0.00
        Temp. Threshold(celsius)       80.00       -5.00        75.00        15.00
        Voltage Threshold(volt)         3.46        3.13         3.43         3.16
        LBC High Threshold = 98 %
        Configured Tx Power = -6.00 dBm
        Configured CD High Threshold = 80000 ps/nm
        Configured CD lower Threshold = -80000 ps/nm
        Configured OSNR lower Threshold = 9.00 dB
        Configured DGD Higher Threshold = 80.00 ps
        Baud Rate =  59.8437500000 GBd
        Modulation Type: 16QAM
        Chromatic Dispersion 0 ps/nm
        Configured CD-MIN -4000 ps/nm  CD-MAX 4000 ps/nm
        Second Order Polarization Mode Dispersion = 5.00 ps^2
        Optical Signal to Noise Ratio = 36.30 dB
        Polarization Dependent Loss = 0.40 dB
        Polarization Change Rate = 0.00 rad/s
        Differential Group Delay = 4.00 ps
        Temperature = 54.00 Celsius
        Voltage = 3.37 V
Transceiver Vendor Details
        Form Factor             : QSFP-DD
        Optics type             : QSFPDD 400G ZR
        Name                    : CISCO-ACACIA
        OUI Number              : 7c.b2.5c
        Part Number             : DP04QSDD-E20-19E
        Rev Number              : 10
        Serial Number           : ACA2447003L
        PID                     : QDD-400G-ZR-S
        VID                     : ES03
        Firmware Version        : 61.12
        Date Code(yy/mm/dd)     : 20/12/02
```

Configuring Optical Transmit Power

You can set the transmit power of the optical signal.

Each 400G Digital Coherent QSFP-DD optical module has its own optical transmit (TX) power range. User can change the optical transmit (TX) power value based on the module capability. For "Transmitter specifications", see the following data sheets:

- *Cisco 400G Digital Coherent Optics QSFP-DD Optical Modules Data Sheet*

Table 18: Optical Transmit Power Values

Optical Module	Trunk Speed	Optical Transmit Power (Tx) Shaping	Interval	Supported Range of Optical Transmit Power (Tx) Values (in units of 0.1dBm)[1]		
				Minimum Value	Maximum Value - Typical	Maximum Value - Worst Case
QDD-400G-ZR-S	400G	No	1	-150	-100	-100

Optical Module	Trunk Speed	Optical Transmit Power (Tx) Shaping	Interval	Supported Range of Optical Transmit Power (Tx) Values (in units of 0.1dBm)[1]		
				Minimum Value	Maximum Value - Typical	Maximum Value - Worst Case
QDD-400G-ZRP-S	400G	Yes	1	-150	-110	-130
	300G			-150	-104	-119
	200G			-150	-90	-105
	100G			-150	-59	-75

1. The default optical transmit power (Tx) value is -10 dBm, however with TX shaping enabled the maximum power in 1x400G, 4x100G, 3x100G, 2x100G, and 1x100G modes may be less than -10 dBm.

Transmitting Power Configuration Example

The following example shows how to configure the optical transmit (TX) power on the optics controller:

```
Router#config
Router(config)#controller optics 0/2/0/16
Router(config-Optics)#transmit-power -125
Router(config-Optics)#commit
Router(config-Optics)#exit
Router(config)#exit
```

Running Configuration

This example shows the running configuration for the optics controller:

```
Router#show run controller optics 0/2/0/16
Thu May 13 12:52:35.020 UTC
controller Optics0/0/0/1
 cd-min -4000
 cd-max 4000
 transmit-power -125
!
```

Verification

This example shows how to verify the configured optical transmit power for the optics controller:

```
Router#show controller optics 0/2/0/16
Fri May 28 02:52:06.182 UTC
 Controller State: Up
 Transport Admin State: In Service
 Laser State: Off
 LED State: Off
 FEC State: FEC ENABLED
 Optics Status
         Optics Type:  QSFPDD 400G ZRP
         DWDM carrier Info: C BAND, MSA ITU Channel=80, Frequency=192.15THz,
         Wavelength=1560.200nm
         Alarm Status:
         -------------
         Detected Alarms: None
         LOS/LOL/Fault Status:
         Alarm Statistics:
         -------------
```

```
        HIGH-RX-PWR = 0            LOW-RX-PWR = 0
        HIGH-TX-PWR = 0            LOW-TX-PWR = 0
        HIGH-LBC = 0               HIGH-DGD = 0
        OOR-CD = 0                 OSNR = 0
        WVL-OOL = 0                MEA  = 0
        IMPROPER-REM = 0
        TX-POWER-PROV-MISMATCH = 0
        Laser Bias Current = 0.0 mA
        Actual TX Power = -40.00 dBm
        RX Power = -40.00 dBm
        RX Signal Power = -40.00 dBm
        Frequency Offset = 0 MHz
        Laser Temperature = 0.00 Celsius
        Laser Age = 0 %
        DAC Rate = 1x1.25
        Performance Monitoring: Enable
        THRESHOLD VALUES
        ----------------
        Parameter                 High Alarm  Low Alarm  High Warning  Low Warning
        ------------------------  ----------  ---------  ------------  -----------
        Rx Power Threshold(dBm)         13.0      -24.0          10.0        -22.0
        Tx Power Threshold(dBm)          0.0      -16.0          -2.0        -14.0
        LBC Threshold(mA)               0.00       0.00          0.00         0.00
        Temp. Threshold(celsius)       80.00      -5.00         75.00         0.00
        Voltage Threshold(volt)         3.46       3.13          3.43         3.16
        LBC High Threshold = 98 %
        Configured Tx Power = -12.50 dBm
        Configured CD High Threshold = -5000 ps/nm
        Configured CD lower Threshold = -5000 ps/nm
        Configured OSNR lower Threshold = 9.00 dB
        Configured DGD Higher Threshold = 80.00 ps
        Baud Rate =  60.1385459900 GBd
        Modulation Type: 16QAM
        Chromatic Dispersion 0 ps/nm
        Configured CD-MIN -4000 ps/nm  CD-MAX 4000 ps/nm
        Second Order Polarization Mode Dispersion = 0.00 ps^2
        Optical Signal to Noise Ratio = 0.00 dB
        Polarization Dependent Loss = 0.00 dB
        Polarization Change Rate = 0.00 rad/s
        Differential Group Delay = 0.00 ps
        Temperature = 20.00 Celsius
        Voltage = 3.41 V
Transceiver Vendor Details
        Form Factor             : QSFP-DD
        Optics type             : QSFPDD 400G ZRP
        Name                    : CISCO-ACACIA
        OUI Number              : 7c.b2.5c
        Part Number             : DP04QSDD-E30-19E
        Rev Number              : 10
        Serial Number           : ACA244900GN
        PID                     : QDD-400G-ZRP-S
        VID                     : ES03
        Firmware Version        : 161.06
        Date Code(yy/mm/dd)     : 20/12/08
```

Configuring Muxponder Mode

By default, the Cisco IOS XR software configures the 400G Digital Coherent QSFP-DD optical modules in the 400G transponder mode.

However, you can configure muxponder mode on optics controllers. Based on the muxponder mode, you can choose the modulation.

Table 19: Supported Ports and Command for Configuring Muxponder Mode

Platforms with 400G Direct Ports	Direct Ports (n) with 400G	ZR/ZRP	Bright ZRP	Mode	Command
NC57-24DD	n = 0,2,4,6,8,10,12,14,16,18,20,22	7.3.2/7.5.1	–	400G	*Default*
NC57-18DD-SE	n = 18,20,22	7.3.2/7.5.1	–	4x100G	**controller optics** *0/x/0/n* **breakout** *4x100*
NCS-57B1-6D24H-S	n = 24,25,26,27,28,29	7.3.2/7.5.1	–	1x100G	**controller optics** *0/x/0/n* **breakout** *1x100*
NCS-57B1-5D24H-SE	n = 24,25,26,27,28	7.3.2/7.5.1	–		
NCS-57C1-48Q6D-S	n = 0,2,4	7.5.2/7.7.1	–		
Platforms with Flex Port Pairs	**Port Pairs (n,n+1) sharing 400G**	**ZR/ZRP**	**Bright ZRP**	**Mode**	**Command**
NC57-18DD-SE (max 6 ZR or 3 ZRP)	n = 0,2,4,6,8,10,12,14,16,24,26,28	7.3.2/7.5.1	–	400G	**hw-module port-range** *n n+1* **location** *0/x/CPU0* **mode** *400*
NC57-36H6D-S	n = 24,26,28,30,32,34	7.3.2/7.5.1	–	4x100G	**hw-module port-range** *n n+1* **location** *0/x/CPU0* **mode** *4x100*
				3x100G	**hw-module port-range** *n n+1* **location** *0/x/CPU0* **mode** *3x100*
				2x100G	**hw-module port-range** *n n+1* **location** *0/x/CPU0* **mode** *2x100-pam4*
				1x100G	**hw-module port-range** *n n+1* **location** *0/x/CPU0* **mode** *1x100*

Table 20: Other Platform Combinations: Supported Ports and Commands for Configuring Muxponder Mode

Platforms with NC57-MPA-2D4H-S in 400G mode, (0,1,2,3) sharing 400G	MPA Slots	ZR/ZRP	Bright ZRP	Mode	Command
NCS-55A2-MOD(-SSE-S/-SE-H-S/-H-S/HD-S/-HX-S)	m = 1,2	7.5.1	–	3x100G	**hw-module port-range** *0 2* **instance** *m* **location** *0/x/CPU0* **mode** *3x100*

Note The following line cards do not support CVR-QSFP-SFP10G and any 1Gbps optics:

- NCS-57B1-6D24-SYS
- NCS-57B1-5DSE-SYS
- NC57-24DD
- NC57-18DD-SE
- NC57-36H-SE
- NC57-36H6D
- NC57-MOD-S

Muxponder mode options available for QDD-400G-ZR-S are:

- 4x100

Muxponder mode options available for QDD-400G-ZRP-S are:

- 4x100
- 3x100
- 2x100 (or 2x100-PAM4)
- 1x100

See the following tables for the modulation values, based on the muxponder mode:

- Table 15: QDD-400G-ZR-S Transponder and Muxponder Configuration Values, on page 217
- Table 16: QDD-400G-ZRP-S Transponder and Muxponder Configuration Values, on page 218
- #unique_221 unique_221_Connect_42_section_agy_yc2_jxb

Using the **no breakout** *muxponder mode* command, you can switch from the muxponder mode to the transponder mode, on optics controllers.

Muxponder Mode Configuration Example

The following example shows how to configure muxponder mode on the optics controller:

```
Router#config
Router(config)#controller optics 0/0/0/13
Router(config-Optics)#breakout 4x100
Router(config-Optics)#commit
Router(config-Optics)#exit
Router(config)#exit
```

Note In the above example, the Cisco IOS XR software creates four Ethernet clients with 100GE speed, which can be verified using the **show interfaces brief | include** *R/S/I/P* command.

Running Configuration

This example shows the running configuration for the optics controller:

```
Router#show run controller optics 0/0/0/13
Thu May 13 12:24:42.353 UTC
controller Optics0/0/0/13
 cd-min -4000
 cd-max 4000
 breakout 4x100
 !
```

Verification

This example shows how to verify the muxponder mode configuration:

```
Router#show interfaces brief | include 0/0/0/13
 Hu0/0/0/13/0           up           up               ARPA  1514  100000000
 Hu0/0/0/13/1           up           up               ARPA  1514  100000000
 Hu0/0/0/13/2           up           up               ARPA  1514  100000000
 Hu0/0/0/13/3           up           up               ARPA  1514  100000000
```

Transponder Mode Configuration Example

The following example shows how to switch to the transponder mode, on the optics controller:

```
Router#config
Router(config)#controller optics 0/0/0/13
Router(config-Optics)#no breakout 4x100
Router(config-Optics)#commit
Router(config-Optics)#exit
Router(config)#exit
```

Note The Cisco IOS XR software creates a single 400GE interface, which can be verified using the **show interfaces brief | include** *R/S/I/P* command.

Running Configuration

This example shows the running configuration for the optics controller. The breakout configuration is absent in the running configuration.

```
Router#show run controller optics 0/0/0/13
Thu May 13 13:51:20.330 UTC
controller Optics0/0/0/13
 cd-min -4000
 cd-max 4000
 transmit-power -100
 !
```

Verification

This example shows how to verify the transponder mode configuration:

```
Router#show interfaces brief | include 0/0/0/13
FH0/0/0/13          up           up               ARPA  1514  400000000
```

Configuring Modulation

You can configure modulation on optics controllers. Based on the muxponder mode, you can choose the modulation.

Note The system accepts any modulation value that is entered. However, if the modulation value is outside the supported range, it is not configured on the optical module. Instead, the optical module is auto-configured with a valid modulation value. To view this value, use the **show controller optics** *R/S/I/P* command.

See the following tables for the supported modulation values:

- Table 15: QDD-400G-ZR-S Transponder and Muxponder Configuration Values, on page 217
- Table 16: QDD-400G-ZRP-S Transponder and Muxponder Configuration Values, on page 218

Modulation Configuration Example

The following example shows how to configure modulation on the optics controller:

```
Router#config
Router(config)#controller optics 0/0/0/1
Router(config-Optics)#modulation 16Qam
Router(config-Optics)#commit
Router(config-Optics)#exit
Router(config)#exit
```

Running Configuration

This example shows the running configuration:

```
Router#show run controller optics 0/0/0/1
controller Optics0/0/0/1
 cd-min -4000
 cd-max 4000
 transmit-power -100
 modulation 16Qam
!
```

Note Use the **show controller optics** *R/S/I/P* command to verify the modulation value of the optical module.

Verification

This example shows how to verify the configured modulation value for the optics controller:

```
Router#show controller optics 0/0/0/1
 Controller State: Up
 Transport Admin State: In Service
 Laser State: On
 LED State: Green
 FEC State: FEC ENABLED
 Optics Status
         Optics Type:  QSFPDD 400G ZR
         DWDM carrier Info: C BAND, MSA ITU Channel=61, Frequency=193.10THz,
         Wavelength=1552.524nm
         Alarm Status:
```

```
        -------------
        Detected Alarms: None
        LOS/LOL/Fault Status:
        Alarm Statistics:
        -------------
        HIGH-RX-PWR = 0            LOW-RX-PWR = 0
        HIGH-TX-PWR = 0            LOW-TX-PWR = 0
        HIGH-LBC = 0               HIGH-DGD = 0
        OOR-CD = 0                 OSNR = 35
        WVL-OOL = 0                MEA  = 0
        IMPROPER-REM = 0
        TX-POWER-PROV-MISMATCH = 0
        Laser Bias Current = 0.0 %
        Actual TX Power = -7.87 dBm
        RX Power = -8.27 dBm
        RX Signal Power = -8.43 dBm
        Frequency Offset = 130 MHz
        Performance Monitoring: Enable
        THRESHOLD VALUES
        ----------------
        Parameter                 High Alarm  Low Alarm  High Warning  Low Warning
        ------------------------  ----------  ---------  ------------  -----------
        Rx Power Threshold(dBm)          1.9      -28.2           0.0        -25.0
        Tx Power Threshold(dBm)          0.0      -15.0          -2.0        -16.0
        LBC Threshold(mA)               0.00       0.00          0.00         0.00
        Temp. Threshold(celsius)       80.00      -5.00         75.00        15.00
        Voltage Threshold(volt)         3.46       3.13          3.43         3.16
        LBC High Threshold = 98 %
        Configured Tx Power = -6.00 dBm
        Configured CD High Threshold = 80000 ps/nm
        Configured CD lower Threshold = -80000 ps/nm
        Configured OSNR lower Threshold = 9.00 dB
        Configured DGD Higher Threshold = 80.00 ps
        Baud Rate =  59.8437500000 GBd
        Modulation Type: 16QAM
        Chromatic Dispersion 0 ps/nm
        Configured CD-MIN -4000 ps/nm  CD-MAX 4000 ps/nm
        Second Order Polarization Mode Dispersion = 5.00 ps^2
        Optical Signal to Noise Ratio = 36.30 dB
        Polarization Dependent Loss = 0.40 dB
        Polarization Change Rate = 0.00 rad/s
        Differential Group Delay = 4.00 ps
        Temperature = 54.00 Celsius
        Voltage = 3.37 V
Transceiver Vendor Details
        Form Factor            : QSFP-DD
        Optics type            : QSFPDD 400G ZR
        Name                   : CISCO-ACACIA
        OUI Number             : 7c.b2.5c
        Part Number            : DP04QSDD-E20-19E
        Rev Number             : 10
        Serial Number          : ACA2447003L
        PID                    : QDD-400G-ZR-S
        VID                    : ES03
        Firmware Version       : 61.12
        Date Code(yy/mm/dd)    : 20/12/02
```

Configuring DAC Rate

You can set the DAC (digital to analog conversion) sampling rate on optics controllers. You can modify the DAC sampling rate only on the QDD-400G-ZRP-S optical modules.

Note QDD-400G-ZR-S supports 1x1 dac-rate in cFEC mode. QDD-400G-ZRP-S optical modules support 1x1 dac-rate in cFEC mode and 1x1.25 dac-rate in oFEC mode.

DAC Rate Configuration Example

The following example shows how to set the DAC rate on the optics controller:

```
Router#config
Router(config)#controller optics 0/0/0/1
Router(config-Optics)#dac-rate 1x1
```

Verification

This example shows the running configuration:

```
Router#show run controller optics 0/0/0/1
Thu May 13 12:52:35.020 UTC
controller Optics0/0/0/1
 cd-min -4000
 cd-max 4000
 transmit-power -100
 modulation 16Qam
 DAC-Rate 1x1
!
!
```

Verification

This example shows how to verify the configured DAC rate for the optics controller:

```
Router#show controller optics 0/0/0/1
 Controller State: Up
 Transport Admin State: In Service
 Laser State: On
 LED State: Green
 FEC State: FEC ENABLED
 Optics Status
         Optics Type:  QSFPDD 400G ZR
         DWDM carrier Info: C BAND, MSA ITU Channel=61, Frequency=193.10THz,
         Wavelength=1552.524nm
         Alarm Status:
         -------------
         Detected Alarms: None
         LOS/LOL/Fault Status:
         Alarm Statistics:
         -------------
         HIGH-RX-PWR = 0            LOW-RX-PWR = 0
         HIGH-TX-PWR = 0            LOW-TX-PWR = 0
         HIGH-LBC = 0               HIGH-DGD = 0
         OOR-CD = 0                 OSNR = 35
         WVL-OOL = 0                MEA  = 0
         IMPROPER-REM = 0
         TX-POWER-PROV-MISMATCH = 0
         Laser Bias Current = 0.0 %
         Actual TX Power = -7.87 dBm
         RX Power = -8.27 dBm
         RX Signal Power = -8.43 dBm
         Frequency Offset = 130 MHz
         DAC Rate = 1x1
         Performance Monitoring: Enable
         THRESHOLD VALUES
         ----------------
```

```
        Parameter                 High Alarm  Low Alarm  High Warning  Low Warning
        ------------------------  ----------  ---------  ------------  -----------
        Rx Power Threshold(dBm)          1.9      -28.2           0.0        -25.0
        Tx Power Threshold(dBm)          0.0      -15.0          -2.0        -16.0
        LBC Threshold(mA)               0.00       0.00          0.00         0.00
        Temp. Threshold(celsius)       80.00      -5.00         75.00        15.00
        Voltage Threshold(volt)         3.46       3.13          3.43         3.16
        LBC High Threshold = 98 %
        Configured Tx Power = -6.00 dBm
        Configured CD High Threshold = 80000 ps/nm
        Configured CD lower Threshold = -80000 ps/nm
        Configured OSNR lower Threshold = 9.00 dB
        Configured DGD Higher Threshold = 80.00 ps
        Baud Rate =  59.8437500000 GBd
        Modulation Type: 16QAM
        Chromatic Dispersion 0 ps/nm
        Configured CD-MIN -4000 ps/nm  CD-MAX 4000 ps/nm
        Second Order Polarization Mode Dispersion = 5.00 ps^2
        Optical Signal to Noise Ratio = 36.30 dB
        Polarization Dependent Loss = 0.40 dB
        Polarization Change Rate = 0.00 rad/s
        Differential Group Delay = 4.00 ps
        Temperature = 54.00 Celsius
        Voltage = 3.37 V
Transceiver Vendor Details
        Form Factor             : QSFP-DD
        Optics type             : QSFPDD 400G ZR
        Name                    : CISCO-ACACIA
        OUI Number              : 7c.b2.5c
        Part Number             : DP04QSDD-E20-19E
        Rev Number              : 10
        Serial Number           : ACA2447003L
        PID                     : QDD-400G-ZR-S
        VID                     : ES03
        Firmware Version        : 61.12
        Date Code(yy/mm/dd)     : 20/12/02
```

Configuring FEC

You can configure forward error correction (FEC) only on optics controllers. You can modify FEC only on the QDD-400G-ZRP-S optical modules. FEC is a feature that is used for controlling errors during data transmission. This feature works by adding data redundancy to the transmitted message using an algorithm. This redundancy allows the receiver to detect and correct a limited number of errors occurring anywhere in the message, instead of having to ask the transmitter to resend the message.

Note QDD-400G-ZR-S supports cFEC (concatenated forward error correction). QDD-400G-ZRP-S support cFEC and oFEC (open forward error correction).

FEC Configuration Example

The following sample shows how to configure FEC on the optics controller:

```
Router#configure
Router(config)#controller optics 0/0/0/13
Router(config-Optics)#fec CFEC
Router(config-Optics)#commit
```

```
Router(config-Optics)#exit
Router(config)#exit
```

Running Configuration

This example shows the running configuration:

```
Router#show controllers optics 0/0/0/13
controller Optics0/0/0/1
 cd-min -4000
 cd-max 4000
 transmit-power -100
 fec CFEC
 modulation 16Qam
 DAC-Rate 1x1.25
!
```

Verification

This example shows how to verify the FEC configuration for the optics controller:

```
Router#show controller coherentdsp 0/0/0/13
Thu May 27 17:28:51.960 UTC
Port                                          : CoherentDSP 0/0/0/13
Controller State                              : Down
Inherited Secondary State                     : Normal
Configured Secondary State                    : Maintenance
Derived State                                 : Maintenance
Loopback mode                                 : Internal
BER Thresholds                                : SF = 1.0E-5  SD = 1.0E-7
Performance Monitoring                        : Enable
Bandwidth                                     : 400.0Gb/s

Alarm Information:
LOS = 6 LOF = 0 LOM = 0
OOF = 0 OOM = 0 AIS = 0
IAE = 0 BIAE = 0        SF_BER = 0
SD_BER = 0      BDI = 0 TIM = 0
FECMISMATCH = 0 FEC-UNC = 0     FLEXO_GIDM = 0
FLEXO-MM = 0    FLEXO-LOM = 0   FLEXO-RDI = 0
FLEXO-LOF = 5
Detected Alarms                               : LOS
Bit Error Rate Information
PREFEC  BER                                   : 5.0E-01
POSTFEC BER                                   : 0.0E+00
Q-Factor                                      : 0.00 dB
Q-Margin                                      : -7.20dB
OTU TTI Received

FEC mode                                      : C_FEC
```

Configuring Loopback

You can configure internal or line loopback on coherent DSP controllers. Loopback can be performed only in the maintenance mode.

Loopback Configuration Example

This example shows how to enable internal loopback configuration on coherent DSP controllers:

```
Router#config
Router(config)#controller coherentDSP 0/0/0/4
Router(config-CoDSP)#secondary-admin-state maintenance
```

```
Router(config-CoDSP)#loopback internal
Router(config-CoDSP)#commit
```

Running Configuration

This example shows the running configuration on coherent DSP controllers:

```
Router#show run controller coherentdsp 0/0/0/4
Thu May 13 19:51:08.175 UTC
controller CoherentDSP0/0/0/4
 secondary-admin-state maintenance
 loopback internal
!
```

Verification

This example shows how to verify the loopback configuration on coherent DSP controllers:

```
Router#show controller coherentdsp 0/0/0/4
Thu May 27 17:28:51.960 UTC
Port                                          : CoherentDSP 0/0/0/4
Controller State                              : Down
Inherited Secondary State                     : Normal
Configured Secondary State                  : Maintenance
Derived State                                 : Maintenance
Loopback mode                               : Internal
BER Thresholds                                : SF = 1.0E-5  SD = 1.0E-7
Performance Monitoring                        : Enable
Bandwidth                                     : 400.0Gb/s
Alarm Information:
LOS = 6 LOF = 0 LOM = 0
OOF = 0 OOM = 0 AIS = 0
IAE = 0 BIAE = 0        SF_BER = 0
SD_BER = 0      BDI = 0 TIM = 0
FECMISMATCH = 0 FEC-UNC = 0     FLEXO_GIDM = 0
FLEXO-MM = 0    FLEXO-LOM = 0   FLEXO-RDI = 0
FLEXO-LOF = 5
Detected Alarms                               : LOS
Bit Error Rate Information
PREFEC  BER                                   : 5.0E-01
POSTFEC BER                                   : 0.0E+00
Q-Factor                                      : 0.00 dB
Q-Margin                                      : -7.20dB
OTU TTI Received
FEC mode                                      : C_FEC
```

Configuring Performance Monitoring

Performance monitoring (PM) parameters are used by service providers to gather, store, set thresholds for, and report performance data for early detection of problems. The user can retrieve both current and historical PM counters for the various controllers in 30-second, 15-minute, and 24-hour intervals.

Performance monitoring can be configured on optics controllers and coherent DSP controllers.

To stop performance monitoring on optics or coherent DSP controllers, use the **perf-mon disable** keyword.

Configuring PM Parameters

The performance monitorning (PM) threshold and the threshold crossing alert (TCA) reporting status can be configured for optics controllers and coherent DSP controllers:

Table 21: PM Thresholds and TCA Report Status for Optics Controllers

PM Parameters	Description
CD	Sets the CD (chromatic dispersion) threshold or TCA reporting status.
DGD	Sets the DGD (differential group delay) threshold or TCA reporting status.
LBC	Sets the LBC (laser bias current) threshold or TCA reporting status in mA.
FREQ-OFF	Sets the FREQ-OFF (low signal frequency offset) threshold or TCA reporting status in Mhz.
OPR	Sets the OPR (optical power RX) threshold or TCA reporting status in uW or dbm.
OPT	Sets the OPT (optical power TX) threshold or TCA reporting status in uW or dbm.
OSNR	Sets the OSNR (optical signal-to-noise ratio) threshold or TCA reporting status.
PCR	Sets the PCR (polarization change rate) threshold or TCA reporting status.
PDL	Sets the PDL (polarization dependent loss) threshold or TCA reporting status.
RX-SIG	Sets the RX-SIG (receiving signal power) threshold or TCA reporting status in uW or dbm.
SNR	Sets the SNR (signal-to-noise ratio) threshold or TCA reporting status.
SOPMD	Sets the SOPMD (second order polarization mode dispersion) threshold or TCA reporting status.

Table 22: PM Thresholds TCA Report Status for Coherent DSP Controllers

PM Parameters	Description
Q	Sets the Q threshold or TCA reporting status.
Q-margin	Sets the Q margin threshold or TCA reporting status.

PM Parameters	Description
EC-BITS	Sets the EC-BITS (error corrected bits) threshold or TCA reporting status.
PostFEC BER	Sets the post-FEC BER threshold or TCA reporting status.
PreFEC BER	Sets the pre-FEC BER threshold or TCA reporting status.
UC-WORDS	Sets the UC-WORDS (uncorrected words) threshold or TCA reporting status.

Performance Monitoring Configuration Example

This example shows how to enable performance monitoring and set PM thresholds on the optics controller:

```
Router#config
Router(config)#controller optics 0/2/0/16
Router(config-Optics)#perf-mon enable
Router(config-Optics)#pm 30-sec optics threshold cd max 100
Router(config-Optics)#pm 30-sec optics threshold cd min -100
Router(config-Optics)#commit
```

Running Configuration

This example shows the running configuration on optics controllers:

```
Router#show run controller optics 0/2/0/16
Thu May 13 20:18:55.957 UTC
controller Optics0/2/0/16
pm 30-sec optics threshold cd max 100
pm 30-sec optics threshold cd min -100
 perf-mon enable
!
```

Verification

This example shows how to verify the PM parameters on optics controllers. Verify the configuration changes in the Configured Threshold fields:

```
Router#show controller optics 0/2/0/16 pm current 30-sec optics 1
  Thu May 27 17:58:49.889 UTC
Optics in the current interval [17:58:30 - 17:58:49 Thu May 27 2021]
Optics current bucket type : Valid
            MIN       AVG       MAX      Operational      Configured      TCA   Operational
      Configured     TCA
                                          Threshold(min)   Threshold(min) (min) Threshold(max)
   Threshold(max) (max)
LBC[mA ]      : 0.0       0.0       0.0      0.0               NA              NO   100.0
           NA               NO
OPT[dBm]      : -9.98     -9.98     -9.98    -15.09            NA              NO   0.00
           NA               NO
OPR[dBm]      : -40.00    -40.00    -40.00   -30.00            NA              NO   8.00
           NA               NO
CD[ps/nm]     : 0         0         0        -80000          -100          NO   100
     100          NO
DGD[ps ]      : 0.00      0.00      0.00     0.00              NA              NO   80.00
           NA               NO
SOPMD[ps^2]   : 0.00      0.00      0.00     0.00              NA              NO   2000.00
           NA               NO
```

```
OSNR[dB]      : 0.00      0.00      0.00      0.00              NA               NO   40.00
          NA               NO
PDL[dB]       : 0.00      0.00      0.00      0.00              NA               NO   7.00
          NA               NO
PCR[rad/s]    : 0.00      0.00      0.00      0.00            NA             NO   2500000.00
       NA              NO
RX_SIG[dBm]   : -40.00    -40.00    -40.00    -30.00            NA               NO   1.00
          NA               NO
FREQ_OFF[Mhz]: 0          0         0         -3600             NA               NO   3600
          NA               NO
SNR[dB]       : 0.00      0.00      0.00      7.00              NA               NO   100.00
          NA               NO

Last clearing of "show controllers OPTICS" counters never
!
```

Performance Monitoring Configuration Example

This example shows how to enable performance monitoring and set PM thresholds and TCA reporting status on the coherent DSP controller:

```
Router#config
Router(config)#controller CoherentDSP0/2/0/16
Router(config-CoDSP)#perf-mon enable
Router(config-CoDSP)#pm 30-sec fec report Q max-tca enable
Router(config-CoDSP)#pm 30-sec fec report Q-margin max-tca enable
Router(config-CoDSP)#pm 30-sec fec report Q min-tca enable
Router(config-CoDSP)#pm 30-sec fec report Q-margin min-tca enable
Router(config-CoDSP)#pm 30-sec fec threshold Q max 1200
Router(config-CoDSP)#pm 30-sec fec threshold Q-margin max 500
Router(config-CoDSP)#pm 30-sec fec threshold Q min 900
Router(config-CoDSP)#pm 30-sec fec threshold Q-margin min 280
Router(config-CoDSP)#commit
```

Running Configuration

This example shows the running configuration on coherent DSP controllers:

```
Router#show run controller coherentdsp 0/2/0/16
Thu May 13 19:56:09.136 UTC
controller CoherentDSP0/2/0/16
 pm 30-sec fec report Q max-tca enable
 pm 30-sec fec report Q-margin max-tca enable
 pm 30-sec fec report Q min-tca enable
 pm 30-sec fec report Q-margin min-tca enable
 pm 30-sec fec threshold Q max 1200
 pm 30-sec fec threshold Q-margin max 500
 pm 30-sec fec threshold Q min 900
 pm 30-sec fec threshold Q-margin min 280
 perf-mon enable
 !
```

Verification

This example shows how to verify the PM parameters on coherent DSP controllers. Verify the configuration changes in the highlighted fields:

```
Router#show controllers coherentdsp 0/2/0/16 pm current 30-sec fec
Thu May 27 23:04:54.167 UTC
g709 FEC in the current interval [23:04:30 - 23:04:54 Thu May 27 2021]
FEC current bucket type : Valid
    EC-BITS   : 0                       Threshold : 111484000000          TCA(enable)  :
YES
    UC-WORDS  : 0                       Threshold : 5                     TCA(enable)  :
YES
```

```
                                        MIN       AVG       MAX       Threshold       TCA
 Threshold     TCA
                                                                        (min)      (enable)
   (max)      (enable)
PreFEC BER                      :      0E-15     0E-15     0E-15       0E-15         NO
0E-15         NO
PostFEC BER                     :      0E-15     0E-15     0E-15       0E-15         NO
0E-15         NO
Q[dB]                           :       0.00      0.00      0.00      9.00  YES 120.00  YES
Q_Margin[dB]                    :       0.00      0.00      0.00      2.80  YES  5.00   YES
 !
```

Configuring Alarms Threshold

The alarms threshold can be configured for monitoring alarms on optics controllers:

Table 23: Alarms Threshold Parameters for Optics Controllers

Alarm Threshold Parameters	Description
CD	Sets the CD (chromatic dispersion) alarm threshold (cd-low-threshold and cd-high-threshold).
DGD	Sets the DGD (differential group delay) alarm threshold.
LBC	Sets the LBC (laser bias current) threshold in mA.
OSNR	Sets the OSNR (optical signal-to-noise ratio) alarm threshold.

Alarm Threshold Configuration Example

This example shows how to configure alarm threshold on the optics controller:

```
Router#config
Router(config)#controller optics 0/2/0/16
Router(config-Optics)#cd-low-threshold -2000
Router(config-Optics)#cd-high-threshold 2000
Router(config-Optics)#commit
```

Running Configuration

This example shows the running configuration on the optics controller:

```
Router#show run controller optics 0/2/0/16
Thu May 13 20:18:55.957 UTC
controller Optics0/2/0/16
 cd-low-threshold 2000
 cd-high-threshold 2000
!
```

Verification

This example shows how to verify the alarm threshold on optics controllers:

```
Router#show controller optics 0/2/0/16
Fri May 28 01:04:33.604 UTC
 Controller State: Up
 Transport Admin State: In Service
```

```
Laser State: Off
LED State: Off
FEC State: FEC ENABLED
Optics Status
        Optics Type:  QSFPDD 400G ZRP
        DWDM carrier Info: C BAND, MSA ITU Channel=61, Frequency=193.10THz,
        Wavelength=1552.524nm
        Alarm Status:
        -------------
        Detected Alarms: None
        LOS/LOL/Fault Status:
        Alarm Statistics:
        -------------
        HIGH-RX-PWR = 0            LOW-RX-PWR = 0
        HIGH-TX-PWR = 0            LOW-TX-PWR = 0
        HIGH-LBC = 0               HIGH-DGD = 0
        OOR-CD = 0                 OSNR = 0
        WVL-OOL = 0                MEA  = 0
        IMPROPER-REM = 0
        TX-POWER-PROV-MISMATCH = 0
        Laser Bias Current = 0.0 mA
        Actual TX Power = -40.00 dBm
        RX Power = -40.00 dBm
        RX Signal Power = -40.00 dBm
        Frequency Offset = 0 MHz
        Laser Temperature = 0.00 Celsius
        Laser Age = 0 %
        DAC Rate = 1x1.25
        Performance Monitoring: Enable
        THRESHOLD VALUES
        ----------------
        Parameter                 High Alarm  Low Alarm  High Warning  Low Warning
        ------------------------  ----------  ---------  ------------  -----------
        Rx Power Threshold(dBm)         13.0      -24.0          10.0        -22.0
        Tx Power Threshold(dBm)          0.0      -16.0          -2.0        -14.0
        LBC Threshold(mA)               0.00       0.00          0.00         0.00
        Temp. Threshold(celsius)       80.00      -5.00         75.00         0.00
        Voltage Threshold(volt)         3.46       3.13          3.43         3.16
        LBC High Threshold = 98 %
        Configured Tx Power = -10.00 dBm
        Configured CD High Threshold = -5000 ps/nm
        Configured CD lower Threshold = -5000 ps/nm
        Configured OSNR lower Threshold = 9.00 dB
        Configured DGD Higher Threshold = 80.00 ps
        Baud Rate =  60.1385459900 GBd
        Modulation Type: 16QAM
        Chromatic Dispersion 0 ps/nm
        Configured CD-MIN -26000 ps/nm  CD-MAX 26000 ps/nm
        Second Order Polarization Mode Dispersion = 0.00 ps^2
        Optical Signal to Noise Ratio = 0.00 dB
        Polarization Dependent Loss = 0.00 dB
        Polarization Change Rate = 0.00 rad/s
        Differential Group Delay = 0.00 ps
        Temperature = 21.00 Celsius
        Voltage = 3.42 V
Transceiver Vendor Details
        Form Factor            : QSFP-DD
        Optics type            : QSFPDD 400G ZRP
        Name                   : CISCO-ACACIA
        OUI Number             : 7c.b2.5c
        Part Number            : DP04QSDD-E30-19E
        Rev Number             : 10
        Serial Number          : ACA244900GN
        PID                    : QDD-400G-ZRP-S
```

```
        VID                 : ES03
        Firmware Version    : 161.06
        Date Code(yy/mm/dd) : 20/12/08
!
```

Alarms Troubleshooting

This section contains the procedures for troubleshooting alarms.

CD Alarm

Default Severity: Minor (MN), Non-Service-Affecting (NSA)

Logical Object: Controller

The Chromatic Dispersion (CD) alarm is raised when the detected chromatic dispersion value is above or below the configured threshold values.

Clear the CD Alarm

Procedure

Configure threshold value within range if CD value is not within the threshold range.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

DGD Alarm

Default Severity: Minor (MN), Non-Service-Affecting (NSA)

Logical Object: Controller

The Differential Group Delay (DGD) alarm is raised when the value of the differential group delay read by the pluggable port module exceeds the configured threshold value.

Clear the DGD Alarm

Procedure

Configure the threshold value within range if DGD value is not within the threshold range.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

FLEXO_LOF

Default Severity: Critical

Logical Object: OTN

Flexo LOF alarm is raised when loss of alignment is detected on the Flexo frame for more than 3ms.

Clear the FLEXO_LOF Alarm

Procedure

Identify and correct the underlying cause of mis-alignment. The Flexo LOF (Loss of Frame) alarm is cleared when good alignment is detected on the Flexo frame for more than 3ms.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

FLEXO_LOM

Default Severity: Critical

Logical Object: OTN

Flexo LOM (Loss of Multi-Frame) is raised when loss of multi-frame alignment is detected on the Flexo multi-frame for more than 10ms

Clear the FLEXO_LOM Alarm

Procedure

Identify and correct the underlying cause of mis-alignment. The Flexo LOM alarm is cleared when good multi-frame alignment is detected on the Flexo multi-frame.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

HI-LASERBIAS Alarm

Default Severity: Minor (MN), Non-Service-Affecting (NSA)

Logical Object: Controller

The HI-LASERBIAS alarm is raised when the physical pluggable port laser detects a laser bias value beyond the configured high threshold.

Clear the HI-LASERBIAS Alarm

Procedure

Configure the threshold value within range if high laser bias threshold value is not within the threshold range.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

HI-RXPOWER Alarm

Default Severity: Minor (MN), Non-Service-Affecting (NSA)

Logical Object: Controller

The HI-RXPOWER alarm occurs on the client optics controller when the measured individual lane optical signal power of the received signal exceeds the default threshold. The HI-RXPOWER alarm occurs on the trunk optics controller when the total optical signal power of the received signal exceeds the default threshold.

Clear the HI-RXPOWER Alarm

Procedure

Physically verify by using a standard power meter that the optical input power is overcoming the expected power threshold. Connect an attenuator accordingly.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

HI-RXPOWER Warn

Default Severity: Minor (MN), Non-Service-Affecting (NSA)

Logical Object: Software

The HI-RXPOWER warning occurs on the client optics controller when the measured individual lane optical signal power of the received signal exceeds the default threshold. The HI-RXPOWER warning occurs on the trunk optics controller when the total optical signal power of the received signal exceeds the default threshold.

Clear the HI-RXPOWER Warn Alarm

Procedure

Physically verify by using a standard power meter that the optical input power is overcoming the expected power threshold. Connect an attenuator accordingly.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

HI-TEMP Alarm

Default Severity: Critical

Logical Object: Software

The HI-TEMP alarm occurs when the optical module temperature exceeds the default threshold.

Clear the HI-TEMP Alarm

Procedure

Verify the fan is intact and empty slots are blocked for cooling.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

HI-TEMP Warn

Default Severity: Minor (MN), Non-Service-Affecting (NSA)

Logical Object: Software

The HI-TEMP warning occurs when the optical module temperature exceeds the default threshold.

Clear the HI-TEMP Warn Alarm

Procedure

Verify the fan is intact and empty slots are blocked for cooling

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

HI-TXPOWER Alarm

Default Severity: Minor (MN), Non-Service-Affecting (NSA)

Logical Object: Controller

The HI-TXPOWER alarm occurs on the client optics controller when the measured individual lane optical signal power of the transmitted signal exceeds the default threshold. The HI-TXPOWER alarm occurs on the trunk optics controller when the total optical signal power of the transmitted signal exceeds the default threshold.

Clear the HI-TXPOWER Alarm

Procedure

Physically verify by using a standard power meter that the optical output power is overcoming the expected power threshold.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

HI-TXPOWER Warn

Default Severity: Minor (MN), Non-Service-Affecting (NSA)

Logical Object: Software

The HI-TXPOWER warning occurs on the client optics controller when the measured individual lane optical signal power of the transmitted signal exceeds the default threshold. The HI-TXPOWER warning occurs on the trunk optics controller when the total optical signal power of the transmitted signal exceeds the default threshold.

Clear the HI-TXPOWER Warn Alarm

Procedure

Physically verify by using a standard power meter that the optical output power is overcoming the expected power threshold.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

IMPROPER-REM

Default Severity: Critical

Logical Object: Software

The Improper Removal alarm is raised when a physical pluggable is not present on a service-provisioned port.

Clear the IMPROPER-REM Alarm

Procedure

Insert the appropriate QSFP.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

LOF

Default Severity: Critical

Logical Object: OTN

Flexo LOF alarm is raised when loss of alignment is detected on the Flexo frame for more than 3ms.

Clear the LOF Alarm

Procedure

Identify and correct the underlying cause of mis-alignment. The Flexo LOF (Loss of Frame) alarm is cleared when good alignment is detected on the Flexo frame for more than 3ms.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

LOL

Default Severity: Major

Logical Object: Software

LOL alarm is raised when loss of lock is detected on the receive side of the CDR (Clock and Data Recovery)

Clear the LOL Alarm

Procedure

Verify the fiber and power levels.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

LOM

Default Severity: Critical

Logical Object: OTN

Flexo LOM (Loss of Multi-Frame) is raised when loss of multi-frame alignment is detected on the Flexo multi-frame for more than 10ms

Clear the LOM Alarm

Procedure

Identify and correct the underlying cause of mis-alignment. The Flexo LOM alarm is cleared when good multi-frame alignment is detected on the Flexo multi-frame.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

LO-RXPOWER Alarm

Default Severity: Minor (MN), Non-Service-Affecting (NSA)

Logical Object: Controller

The LO-RXPOWER alarm is raised on the client or trunk optics controller when the measured individual lane optical signal power of the received signal falls below the default threshold.

Clear the LO-RXPOWER Alarm

Procedure

Verify that the trunk-rx port is cabled correctly and clean the fiber connecting the faulty TXP/MXP card to the drop port of the DWDM card.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

LO-RXPOWER Warn

Default Severity: Minor (MN), Non-Service-Affecting (NSA)

Logical Object: Software

The LO-RXPOWER warning is raised on the client or trunk optics controller when the measured individual lane optical signal power of the received signal falls below the default threshold.

Clear the LO-RXPOWER Warn Alarm

Procedure

Verify that the trunk-rx port is cabled correctly and clean the fiber connecting the faulty TXP/MXP card to the drop port of the DWDM card.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

LOS

Default Severity: Major

Logical Object: Software

This alarm occurs when there is a loss of signal

Clear the LOS Alarm

Procedure

Identify and correct the underlying cause of signal LOS. The alarm is cleared when signal is improved.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

LOS-P

Default Severity: Minor

Logical Object: OTN

This alarm occurs when there is a loss of signal.

Clear the LOS-P Alarm

Procedure

Identify and correct the underlying cause of signal LOS. The alarm is cleared when signal is improved.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

LO-TXPOWER Alarm

Default Severity: Minor (MN), Non-Service-Affecting (NSA)

Logical Object: Controller

The LO-TXPOWER alarm is raised on the client or trunk optics controller when the measured individual lane optical signal power of the transmitted signal falls below the default threshold.

Clear the LO-TXPOWER Alarm

Procedure

Verify the optics detection and any failures.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

LO-TXPOWER Warn

Default Severity: Minor (MN), Non-Service-Affecting (NSA)

Logical Object: Software

The LO-TXPOWER warning is raised on the client or trunk optics controller when the measured individual lane optical signal power of the transmitted signal falls below the default threshold.

Clear the LO-TXPOWER Warn Alarm

Procedure

Verify the optics detection and any failures.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

OOR_CD

Default Severity: Minor

Logical Object: Controller

This alarm occurs when the Chromatic Dispersion is out of range

Clear the OOR_CD Alarm

Procedure

Configure threshold value within range if CD value is not within the threshold range.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

OSNR Alarm

Default Severity: Minor (MN), Non-Service-Affecting (NSA)

Logical Object: Controller

The Optical Signal Noise Ratio (OSNR) alarm occurs when the measured OSNR falls below the threshold.

Clear the OSNR Alarm

Procedure

Step 1 Verify the value of the minimum acceptable OSNR value of NCS 5500 using the show controller optics R/S/I/P command.

Step 2 If the value is not within the OSNR threshold range, configure the minimum acceptable OSNR value using the controller optics R/S/I/P osnr-low-threshold command in the config mode. The range is 0–4000 (in units of 01db).

Step 3 If the value is within the range of the minimum acceptable OSNR, contact TAC.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

UNC-WORD Alarm

Default Severity: Not Reported (NR), Not-Alarmed, Non-Service-Affecting (NSA)

Logical Object: OTN

The Uncorrected FEC Word (UNC-WORD) condition is raised when the FEC is unable to correct the frame.

Clear the UNC-WORD Alarm

Procedure

Step 1 Ensure that the fiber connector for the card is completely plugged in.

Step 2 Ensure that the ports on the far end and near end nodes have the same port rates and FEC settings.

Step 3 If the BER threshold is correct and at the expected level, use an optical test set to measure the power level of the line to ensure it is within guidelines. For specific procedures to use the test set equipment, consult the manufacturer.

Step 4 If the optical power level is good, verify that the optical receive levels are within the acceptable range.

Step 5 If receive levels are good, clean the fibers at both ends.

Step 6 If the condition does not clear, verify that a single-mode fiber is used.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).

WVL-OOL

Default Severity: Major

Logical Object: Controller

The Wavelength Out of Lock alarm is raised when the port detects the optical input frequency to be out of range.

Clear the WVL-OOL Alarm

Procedure

Step 1 Verify the wavelength configuration.

Step 2 Verify whether the pluggable is inserted properly.

If the alarm does not clear, log into the Technical Support Website at http://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/index.html for more information or call Cisco TAC (1 800 553-2447).